

COMPANION TO CAESAR

JOSEPH PEARL, Ph.D.



REVISED

**300 New Sentences for
Translation**

New Word Lists

COLLEGE ENTRANCE BOOK CO.



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2025

https://archive.org/details/bwb_S0-AYX-086

COMPANION TO CAESAR

NEW REVISED EDITION
With Latest Regents Vocabulary Lists

By
Joseph Pearl, Ph.D.

*Formerly Professor of Classic Languages, Brooklyn College
Author of "Companion to Cicero" and "Companion to Vergil"*

COLLEGE ENTRANCE BOOK COMPANY
104 Fifth Avenue New York City

COMPANION
TO
CAESAR

NEW REVISIONS
With Latin Notes and Vocabulary

Copyright, 1927, 1941, 1950, 1959
by
College Entrance Book Company, Inc.

PREFACE

The purpose of this book is to present in teachable form all the material which should accompany a sound and thorough Latin course based on Caesar.

The outstanding features of this book are :

1. **A Biography of Caesar**, containing the most important and outstanding events of his life.

2. **Roman Military Affairs**, thoroughly treated in outline form. (**Instructive illustrations** have been included to help the pupil understand the text.)

3. **A Summary of Syntax**. The important rules are clearly stated and illustrated by examples from the earlier chapters of the **Gallic War**.

4. **Exercises in Prose Composition**, consisting of 300 sentences for translation into Latin. These sentences have been selected from **Regents and College Entrance Examinations** and arranged according to the main construction they illustrate, e.g., purpose, result, etc. References within the sentences themselves to the rules of syntax will prove a valuable innovation. Also, **Selections for Translation at Sight**.

5. **Idioms and Phrases**, which occur in Caesar, have been collected and alphabetized with the **verb as base**. This enables immediate reference.

6. **Derivation and Word Formation**. These topics have been thoroughly presented. The outline form has been employed and **copious exercises** included.

7. **A List of Latin Words**, arranged in order of the half year in which they are studied, and classified according to parts of speech.

8. **Latest Regents Word List**. The revised vocabulary list includes all the words required by the New York State Board of Regents, as well as many others, together with their Latin translations. All words listed in the latest Regents Syllabus have been marked for easy identification.

9. **An English-Latin Vocabulary** for use in connection with the sentences for translation.

10. **The Recent Examination Papers** of the State Department of Education have been included, to give the student an idea as to the nature of the questions asked.

JOSEPH PEARL, PH.D.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. IMPORTANT EVENTS IN CAESAR'S LIFE	1
II. CAESAR'S ARMY	4
III. IDIOMS AND PHRASES	14
IV. SUMMARY OF SYNTAX	19
V. SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION	30
VI. WORD FORMATION	39
VII. DERIVATION	44
VIII. LATIN WORD LIST—ARRANGED BY HALF YEARS ..	50
IX. LATIN WORD LIST—ARRANGED ALPHABETICALLY..	63
X. SELECTIONS FOR TRANSLATION AT SIGHT	83
XI. ROMAN BACKGROUND	94
XII. PASSAGES FOR SIGHT COMPREHENSION	118
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	128

EXAMINATION PAPERS

CHAPTER I

IMPORTANT EVENTS IN CAESAR'S LIFE

B. C.

100 Gaius Julius Caesar was born July 12, 100 B.C. His father's family traced its history to Iulus, son of Aeneas and grandson of Venus. His mother Aurelia belonged to a prominent plebeian family.

Caesar's early education was that usually received by the sons of wealthy families. Besides Latin and Greek he was taught rhetoric, grammar, philosophy, and oratory. M. Antonius Gniphio, an educated Gaul, was his private teacher.

83 Married Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, a prominent leader of the popular party; through this marriage and through the influence of his uncle Marius, "the darling of the soldiers and of the crowd," Caesar later became the champion of the popular party.

82 Sulla, the leader of the aristocratic party, which was then in power, ordered Caesar to divorce his wife. Caesar's refusal almost cost him his life.

81 In fear of Sulla, Caesar left for Asia Minor, where he served in the war against Mithridates. Here he was awarded the civic crown (*corōna civica*)
80 for saving the life of a fellow citizen at the siege of Mytilene.

78 On Sulla's death, Caesar returned to Rome and brought charges of extortion against Dolabella, who had been governor of Macedonia.

76 Went to Rhodes to study oratory under the famous rhetorician Apollonius Molo. On his way thither, he was captured by pirates, whom, after he had been ransomed, he put to death.

74 Returned to Rome and was chosen military tribune.

68 Served as quaestor and accompanied the governor to Spain as his financial secretary.

67 His wife Cornelia having died, Caesar married Pompeia, Sulla's granddaughter and Pompey's cousin.

Helped to carry the Lex Gabinia, giving Pompey command against the Mediterranean pirates.

66 Supported the Lex Manilia, giving Pompey command against Mithridates.

65 Was curule aedile. In order to win the favor of the multitude, Caesar gave them magnificent theatrical entertainments which involved him in heavy debt.

B. C.

- 63** Became Pontifex Maximus, the head of the Roman state religion.
Spoke in the Senate in the debate on the fellow conspirators of Catiline.
- 62** Held the office of praetor, whose duties were chiefly judicial. **Divorced** Pompeia.
- 61** As proprætor (governor) in Spain he subdued several mountain tribes.
- 60** Returned to Rome, and formed together with Pompey, the conqueror of Mithridates, and Crassus, the richest man in Rome, a league known as the First Triumvirate, whose object was to secure for the triumvirs the honors of the state.
- 59** Consul with Bibulus.
Married Calpurnia.
To strengthen the alliance made with Pompey, Caesar gave him his daughter Julia in marriage.
He secured for Pompey's soldiers the land which they had been promised, and in return, he received, through the influence of the Triumvirate, as his prize, the provinces of Cisalpine Gaul, Illyricum, and Transalpine Gaul for five years.
- 58** Conquered the Helvetians and Ariovistus.
- 57** Subdued the Belgians.
- 56** War with the Veneti.
At a conference of the Triumvirate at Luca, Caesar's governorship of Gaul was extended for five years.
- 55** Expedition to Germany and Britain.
- 54** Second expedition to Britain.
Revolt of the Nervii.
Death of Julia.
- 53** Second expedition to Germany.
Rebellion of the Gallic states.
The death of Crassus and Pompey's alliance with the senatorial party, prompted by his jealousy of Caesar's reputation and influence, broke up the Triumvirate.
- 52** Revolt of almost all Gaul under Vercingetorix. **Fall of Alesia.**
- 51** The last embers of revolt in Gaul quenched.
Caesar published his Commentaries.
- 49** Upon the demand of the Senate that Caesar give up his provinces and dismiss his army, Caesar with a faithful legion crossed the Rubicon, a little stream between his province and Italy, thus precipitating civil war. Soon all Italy was in his power; Pompey and his followers fled to Macedonia.

B. C.**48** Consul for the second time.

Defeated Pompey at Pharsalus in Thessaly. Pompey fled to Egypt, where, upon landing, he was put to death by order of the king.

47 Defeated Ptolemy, King of Egypt, and placed his sister Cleopatra on the throne.

In Pontus, he defeated Pharnaces, the son of Mithridates, and reported that victory to the senate in his three famous words: *vēnī, vīdī, vīcī*.

46 Consul for the third time.

Conquered the adherents of Pompey at Thapsus, in Africa.

Returned to Rome, where he celebrated four triumphs—over Gaul, Egypt, Pontus, and Africa.

Elected dictator for ten years.

Reformed the calendar.

45 Conquered the sons of Pompey at Munda, in Spain.

Made dictator for life.

44 The bitter hatred of his political enemies together with the fear that his growing power might endanger the general good of Rome prompted the conspirators to kill Caesar on the Ides of March.**CAESAR'S ACCOMPLISHMENTS**

Caesar is considered by many the foremost character in history.

He distinguished himself in three directions—in statesmanship, in generalship, and in literature.

He showed his statesmanship in dealing with the Gallic tribes and with both his friends and enemies at Rome.

His generalship has never been surpassed.

His Commentaries are "unadorned, straightforward, and elegant, every embellishment being stripped off as a garment."

CHAPTER II

CAESAR'S ARMY

1 *The Infantry (pedites).*

This was composed exclusively of Roman citizens, who were subject to military service between the ages of seventeen and forty-six for a period of twenty years.

The largest unit of this branch of the army was the legion (**legiō**). Its normal strength was 6,000 men, but in the Gallic War its average size was probably about 3,600 men. The members of the legion were called either **militēs legiōnārii** or **militēs**.

The legion was divided into ten cohorts (**cohortēs**) of 360 men each; each cohort into three maniples (**manipulī**) of 120 men each; each maniple into two centuries (**centuriae, ordinēs**) of 60 men each. Thus, 1 legion = 10 cohorts = 30 maniples = 60 centuries = 3,600 men.

The legions were designated by ordinal numbers given in the order of their formation. Caesar began the Gallic War with six legions; at the close of the War he had eleven. His favorite legion was the Tenth.

2 *The Cavalry (equitēs).*

This was composed chiefly of non-citizens, especially Gauls, Spaniards, and Germans. In the Gallic Wars Caesar used from five to six thousand **equitēs**.

The tactical unit of the cavalry was the squadron (**turma**) of about 30 men.

3 *The Auxiliaries (auxilia).*

These were made up chiefly of non-citizens from allied or subject states. They included:

- a. Light-armed foot soldiers (**levis armātūrae peditēs**), used chiefly to make a show of force and in foraging expeditions.
- b. Slingers (**funditōrēs**), from the Balearic Islands.
- c. Bowmen (**sagittārii**), from Crete and Numidia.

4 *The Non-combatants.*

- a. Camp servants (*cālōnēs*); these performed menial camp duties and acted as servants of the officers.
- b. Muleteers (*mūliōnēs*); in charge of the heavy baggage of the army.
- c. Traders (*mercātōrēs*); these bought booty from the soldiers and sold them provisions.

OFFICERS

- 1 *The Commander-in-Chief (dux), or (imperator)*, after his first important victory. After his victory over the Helvetians, Caesar received the title *imperātor*.

- 2 *The Lieutenants (lēgātī).*

These were men of senatorial rank, appointed by the senate and assigned to the Commander-in-chief. They usually commanded one or more legions, and were regularly in charge of the winter quarters. Caesar mentions about twenty different *lēgātī*, of whom the most famous were: M. Antōnius, L. Aurunculeius Cotta, O. Titūrius Sabinus, D. Iūnius Brūtus, T. Labiēnus, and Q. Tullius Cicerō, the brother of the famous orator.

- 3 *The Quartermaster (quaestor).*

He, too, was of senatorial rank. He was elected by the people for one year and assigned to a particular province to administer its financial affairs. In connection with the army, the quaestor discharged the duties of a modern quartermaster, such as the charge of the military chest, the pay, food, clothing, and general equipment of the soldiers. In battle, the quaestor sometimes commanded a legion.

- 4 *The Tribunes (tribuni militum).*

Six military tribunes were attached to each legion. They were usually young men of equestrian rank, without any previous military experience, who owed their appointment to family or political influence. Their duties were therefore of minor importance, such as the levying and the discharge of soldiers, the command of small detachments and participation in the councils of war.

- 5 *The Prefects (præfecti).*

These were the commanders of the auxiliaries and of the largest unit of the cavalry (*ālā*).

6 The Centurions (*centuriones*).

These were men of plebeian origin, promoted from the ranks on account of their faithfulness, bravery, and efficient service. Each legion had sixty centurions, one for every century. The first centurion of the first cohort was called **primipilus** or **primus pilus**; in battle, it was he who had special care of the standard of the legion. Besides training and leading their centuries, the centurions had other duties, such as finding a suitable place for the camp and bringing together the booty.

7 The Decurions (*decuriones*).

These were subordinate cavalry leaders. Each decurion was in charge of a squadron (**turma**).

Besides these seven classes of officers, there were the privileged soldiers who enjoyed certain exemptions. Such were the **veteran volunteers** (**êvocâtî**, who enjoyed the rank and pay of the centurions, and the **standard bearers** of the legions (**aquiliferî**) and of the maniples (**signiferî**).

CLOTHING AND EQUIPMENT OF THE LEGIONARY SOLDIER

1 Clothing.

- a. A short-sleeved or sleeveless woolen tunic (**tunica**) reaching to the knees.
- b. A woolen mantle (**sagum**) for wet or cold weather.
- c. Heavy leather shoes (**caligae**), fastened by straps.



GALEA



SCUTUM

2 Armor.

a. Defensive weapons.

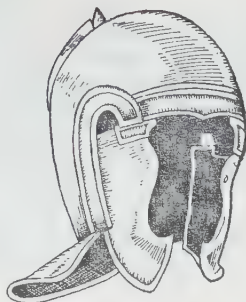
1. A helmet (**galea**) of leather, often adorned with a crest.
2. A coat of mail (**lōrica**) of leather, strengthened with bands of metal.
3. A shield (**scūtum**), slightly curved, about four feet long and two and a half feet wide, made of wood covered with linen and leather, and bound with metal about the rim. In the middle on the inside, it had a handle, and opposite it on the outside a metal boss (**umbō**). The shield was carried on the left arm.



GLADIUS

b. Offensive weapons.

1. A sword (**gladius**), which was about two feet long, straight, pointed, and two-edged. It was kept in a metal-covered wooden scabbard and carried on the right side. The officers carried the sword on the left side.



CASSIS



PILUM

2. A javelin (**pilum**). This consisted of an iron shaft two feet long, which was inserted in a wooden shaft about four feet long. The **pilum** could be thrown about 75 feet.

ARMOR OF THE AUXILIARY FORCES

1 *The Cavalry.*

- a. A long sword.
- b. A lance (**trāgula**) provided with a leather thong (**ammentum**).
- c. A light round or oval shield (**parma**).
- d. A helmet of metal (**cassis**).

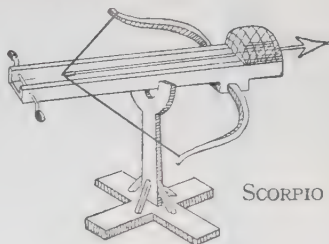
2 *The Auxiliary Infantry.*

- a. A sword.
- b. A missile (**gaesum**, **matara**, **trāgula**, **verūtum**).
- c. The Balearic slingers used slings (**fundae**) of leather and bullets of stone or lead (**glandēs**).

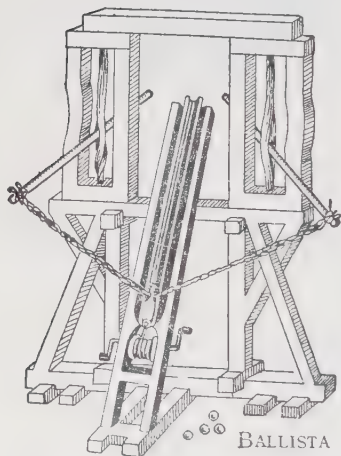
ARTILLERY (TORMENTA)

Three kinds of engines of war are mentioned by Caesar:

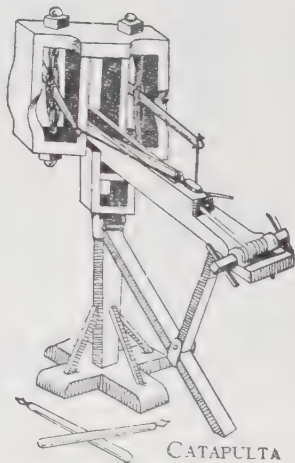
1. The **catapult** (*catapulta*) for shooting large arrows or javelins in a horizontal direction.
2. The **scorpion** (*scorpiō*), which was a small catapult.
3. The **ballista** (*ballista*) for hurling huge stones or heavy blocks of wood through the air at an angle of 45 degrees.



SCORPIO



BALLISTA



CATAPULTA

STANDARDS

1. The standard of the legion was a silver eagle (*aquila*) mounted on a wooden staff.
2. The standards of the maniples consisted of streamers attached to a cross-bar or a pole, with ornaments of various designs below. A common design was the figure of an animal or an open hand.
3. The standard of the cavalry and of the light-armed troops was the *vexillum*, a square piece of colored cloth extended on a frame.
4. The signal for battle was a large red *vexillum* displayed over the commander's tent.



AQUILA



VEXILLUM

THE FLEET

1. The war ship (**nāvis longa**), rather long and narrow, was propelled by both oars and sails. It usually had three banks of oars, which were arranged one above the other (**trireme**). At the prow was a sharp beak (**rōstrum**) of bronze or iron, for ramming the vessels of the enemy. The ship was provided with two rudders, one mast, one large sail, grappling hooks, wooden-towers, and **tormenta**. When not in use, it was drawn up on the shore.
2. The transport (**nāvis onerāria**), shorter and broader than the war ship, was used to convey troops and supplies. It was propelled mainly by sails.

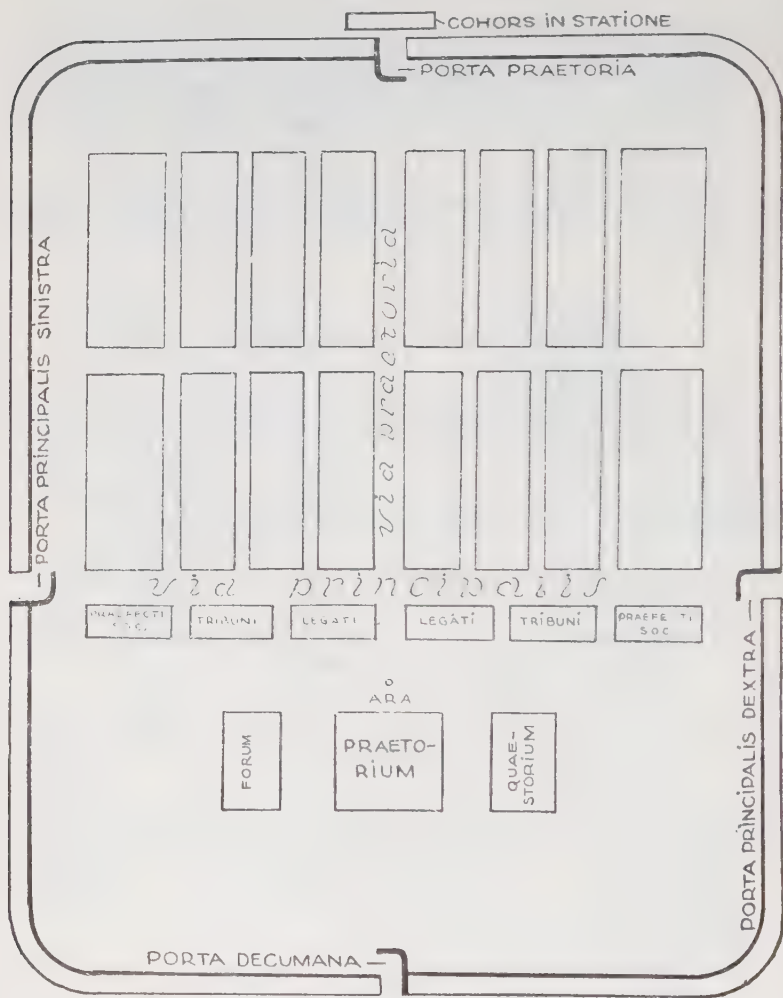
THE PAY, FOOD, AND DISCIPLINE

1. The pay (**stīpendium**) of the legionary soldier was 225 denarii, or about \$45 a year. The centurion and the veteran volunteer received twice as much. Higher officers naturally received higher pay.
2. Twice a month, each soldier received thirty pounds of grain (**frūmentum**), usually wheat, which was ground in a hand-mill and prepared for food by boiling into a paste or by making into unleavened bread.
3. For special bravery, the soldiers would receive one or more of the following rewards:
 - a. Gifts of money.
 - b. Public praise in the presence of the army.
 - c. Promotion in rank.
 - d. Decorations of honor, such as medals, necklaces, armlets, and the most coveted of all—the **corōna cīvica** for saving the life of a Roman citizen in battle.

At the close of his period of service, the soldier would receive an honorable discharge together with a sum of money or an allotment of land.

For insubordination or neglect of duty the following were the usual forms of punishment:

- a. Extra assignment of labor.
- b. Shortening of rations.
- c. Degradation in rank.
- d. Dismissal from the service.
- e. Corporal punishment.
- f. Death (in extreme cases).



A ROMAN CAMP

THE CAMP

1 Site.

A high, sloping ground in the vicinity of wood and water.

2 Shape.

Quadrilateral, usually in the form of a rectangle or square, with its corners rounded.

3 Dimensions.

Depended on the size of the army; a camp accommodating eight legions covered about 106 acres.

4 Fortifications.

- a. Trench (*fossa*), usually nine to twelve feet wide at the top, three feet at the bottom, and seven to nine feet deep.
- b. Rampart (*vallum*), formed of the dirt removed from the trench and thrown up toward the inside of the camp. This was usually six to ten feet high, and wide enough at the top to afford comfortable standing room for the defenders. On the wall was a breastwork of stakes (*valli*), which was sometimes reinforced by branches, wicker-work, and towers erected at regular intervals.

5 Streets.

- a. *Via praetoria*.
- b. *Via principalis*.

These crossed each other at right angles and connected the four gates.

6 Gates.

- a. *Porta praetoria*, the front gate, facing the enemy.
- b. *Porta decumana*, the rear gate.
- c. *Porta principalis dextra*, on the right side.
- d. *Porta principalis sinistra*, on the left side.

Each gate was constantly guarded by a cohort (*cohors in statione*).

7 Tents (*tabernacula*).

- a. The general's tent (*praetorium*), in the rear of the camp.
- b. The officers' tents, near that of the general.
- c. The soldiers' tents, in the forward part of the camp. Each tent accommodated ten men.

BAGGAGE

1 Heavy baggage (*impedimenta*).

- a. Extra supplies of arms.
- b. Provisions.
- c. Clothing.
- d. Tents.
- e. Artillery.
- f. Hand-mills.

This baggage was carried either on the backs of horses and mules (*iumenta*) or in carts (*carri*).

2 The soldier's pack (*sarcinæ*).

- a. Tools for digging.
- b. Cooking utensils.
- c. A supply of grain for two weeks.
- d. One or two rampart stakes.

These articles were tied in a bundle and fastened to the end of a forked pole, which was carried over the shoulder. The weight of the bundle was about sixty pounds.

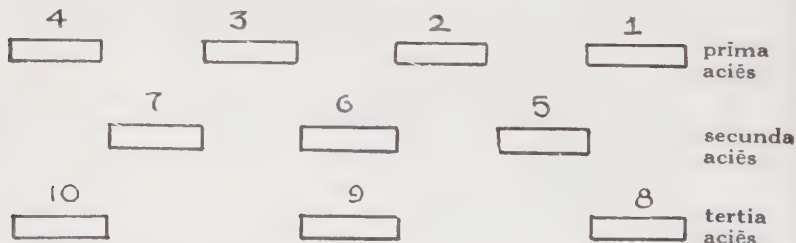
TRIPLEX ACIES

First line: Four cohorts, consisting of the most experienced soldiers. This line began the attack.

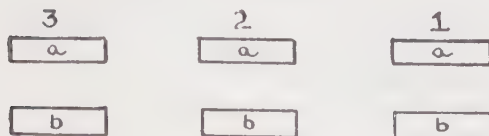
Second line: Three cohorts, so arranged that the cohorts blocked the intervals between those of the first line. This line stood ready to relieve the first.

Third line: Three cohorts, consisting of the least experienced soldiers. This line was used to assist the first two lines or to ward off an attack from the rear.

One legion in triple line formation.



One cohort in formation.



In each cohort the three maniples stood side by side, and in each maniple the centuries stood one behind the other.

THE ARMY ON THE MARCH

1. **The van** (**primum agmen**), consisting of the cavalry and light-armed infantry.
2. **The main force** (**agmen**). Each legion was followed by its own baggage, but in case of danger of an attack, the baggage of the whole army was placed in the center of the column.
3. **The rear guard** (**novissimum agmen**).

A regular day's march lasted about seven hours, and the distance covered was about seventeen miles; a forced march (**iter magnum**) was about twenty-five miles.

VARIOUS SIEGE TERMS

1. The **vinea** was a shed, about 15 feet long, 7 feet wide, and 8 feet high. It was built of heavy timbers covered with hides; it had open ends and was mounted on rollers. Several **vineae** were placed end to end along the siege-mole to enable attacking forces to come close to the enemy's wall in order to break it down.
2. The **testūdō** was a shed with a sloping roof of strong boards used to protect soldiers near the enemy's walls. (Sometimes the name **testūdō** was applied to a kind of covering formed by the shields of the soldiers who were attacking a wall).
3. The **ariēs** (*battering ram*) was a heavy log, 60 to 100 feet long, capped with solid bronze, which was employed in sieges to break down the enemy's walls.
4. The **turris ambulātōria** (*movable tower*) was pushed forward on rollers toward the enemy's walls. The lowest story usually contained a battering ram, and above were artillery, bowmen, and slingers.
5. The **agger** (*siege-mole*) was a great roadway of logs and earth, 40 to 50 feet wide; it was begun about 500 feet from the wall and was gradually extended and raised until it was even with the top of the wall.

CHAPTER III

IDIOMS AND PHRASES

Arranged Alphabetically with the Verb as Base

(ā) bellō **abesse**
facinus **admittere**
beneficiō **afficere** aliquem
laetitīa **afficere**
supplicio **afficere**
difficultate **affici**
dolore **affici**
conventus **agere**
cum aliquō **agere**
grātiās **agere** alicui
praedam **agere**
vineās **agere**
in aliquem **animadvertere**
nāvis **appellitur**

arma **capere**
cōsiliū **capere**
dolorem **capere**
initium **capere** ab
insulam **capere**
portum **capere**
agmen **claudere**
deōs **colere**
proelium **committere**
ad arma **concurrere**
sē **cōnferre**
bellum **cōficere**
in fugam **conicere**
in vincula (catēnās) **conicere**
nāvem **cōnscondere**
mortem sibi **cōnsciscere**
legiōnēs **cōscribere**
exercitum **cōstituere**

in fugam **dare**
inter sē **dare**
operam **dare**
ad ancorās **dēligāre**
(proeliō) **dēcertāre**
nāvem **dēducere**
bellum **dēfendere**

to take no part in war
to commit a crime
to treat some one with kindness
to fill with joy
to punish
to experience difficulty
to be greatly distressed (annoyed)
to hold court
to plead (confer) with some one
to express gratitude, to thank some one
to drive off the plunder
to bring up the sheds
to inflict punishment upon some one
the ship lands

to take up arms
to form a plan
to be grieved
to begin at
to reach an island
to make a harbor
to bring up the rear
to worship the gods
to join battle
to rush to arms
to betake oneself, turn, proceed
to finish a war
to put to flight
to imprison
to go on board, embark
to commit suicide
to enroll legions
to draw up the army

to put to flight
to exchange
to take pains
to anchor
to fight a decisive battle
to launch a ship
to wage a defensive war

summam bellī ad
aliquem **dēferre**
arma **dēpōnere**
memoriam **dēpōnere**
causam **dīcere**
iūs **dīcere**
ab armis **discēdere**
praesidia **dispōnere**

bellum **dūcere**
in mātīmōnium **dūcere**
prīmum pilum **dūcere**

in vulgus **efferre**

oculōs **effodere**
nāvibus **ēgredi**
sē **ēicere**
bonō animō **esse** in aliquem
dictō audiēns **esse** alicuī
ex ūsū **esse**
in statīōne **esse**
est in animō alicuī
nihil **est** negōtī
rēs **est** in angustō
impetum **excipere**
turrīm **excitāre**
ēventum **experīrī**

bellum **facere** alicuī
certiōrem **facere** aliquem
fidem **facere** alicuī

grātum **facere** alicuī
imperāta **facere**
impetum **facere** in aliquem
iter **facere**
perīculum **facere**
potestātem **facere**
proelium **facere**
verba **facere**
vim **facere**
aegrē **ferre**
graviter (molestē) **ferre**
signa **ferre**
certior fierī

*to confer the management of the war
upon some one
to lay down arms
to forget
to plead a case
to administer justice
to lay down arms
to station detachments of troops at
intervals
to prolong a war
to marry
to hold the rank of first centurion*

*to spread abroad among the common
people
to gouge out the eyes
to disembark
to rush out
to be well disposed toward some one
to obey some one
to be of advantage
to be on guard
some one intends
there is no trouble
matters have reached a crisis
to meet the attack
to erect a tower
to await the outcome*

*to make war on some one
to inform some one
to convince some one, to give a pledge
to some one
to do a favor to some one
to carry out orders
to make an attack on some one
to march
to run a risk; to make an attempt
to give opportunity (chance)
to fight
to speak
to use violence
to take to heart, to be vexed
to be annoyed, to be vexed
to advance
to be informed*

bellum **gerere** cum aliquō

to wage war with some one

cēsum **habēre**
 fidem **habēre** alicuī
 grātiā **habēre**
 in animō **habēre**
 in numerō **habēre**
 ōratiōnem **habēre**
 ratiōnem **habēre**
 ratiō aliter sē **habet** ac

to take the census
to have confidence in some one
to feel thankful
to intend
to consider as
to make a speech
to keep an account; to take account of
the principle is different from what

ancorās **iacere**
 militēs **imperāre** alicuī
 bellum **incidit**
incidere in aliquem

to drop anchor, to anchor
to levy soldiers upon some one
war breaks out
to fall in the way of some one, to come
upon some one

cursum **incitāre**
 equum **incitāre**
 bellum **inferre** alicuī
 iniūriam **inferre**
 signa **inferre**
 signa conversa **inferre**
 vulnera **inferre**
 metum (timōrem) **inicere**
 cōsiliū **inire**
 pugnae ratiōnem **insistere**
 sacrificiis **interdicere**
 proeliō **interesse**

to quicken the pace
to urge on (spur) the horse
to make war upon some one
to inflict an injury
to advance
to face about and advance
to inflict wounds
to strike fear
to form a plan
to adopt a plan of battle
to excommunicate
to take part in battle

rūgae sē **mandāre**
 tēla **mittere**
 castra **movēre**

to flee
to hurl darts
to break camp

operam **nāvāre**

to do one's best

adversis hostibus **occurrere**

to meet the enemy face to face

bellum **parāre**
 poenās **pendere**
 stipendium **pendere**
 mūrū **perdūcere**
 poenās **persolvere**
 eodem **pertinēre**

to prepare for war
to pay the penalty
to pay tribute
to construct a wall
to pay the penalty
to point to the same thing, be of the
same nature

fugam **petere**
 fugā salutem **petere**
 arma **pōnere**
 castra **pōnere**
 multum **posse**

to flee
to flee for safety
to lay down arms
to pitch camp
to have great influence

plūs posse
plūrimum posse
legiōnī praeesse
rēbus divinis praeesse
magistrātui praeesse
sē praeferre alicui
praeficere (praepōnere) aliquem
castrīs
officiū praestāre
sacrificia prōcūrāre
memoriam prōdere
pedibus proeliārī

to have greater influence
to have very great influence
to be in command of a legion
to have charge of the services of worship
to hold public office
to show oneself superior to some one
to put some one in command of the camp
to do one's duty
to regulate the sacrifices
to hand down the memory
to fight on foot

in fidem recipere
sē recipere
sē recipere ex terrōre
iūs reddere
grātiā referre
pedem referre
obsidiōnem relinquare
proelium restituere
ad sanitātem revertī

to take under one's protection
to withdraw, retreat
to recover from a panic
to render justice
to make return, requite
to retreat
to leave off a siege
to renew the battle
to come to one's senses

nāvem solvere
novis rēbus studēre
supplicium sūmere dē aliquō

to set sail
to desire a revolution
to inflict punishment on some one

castrīs sē tenēre
memoriā tenēre
ancorās tollere
famem tolerāre

to remain in camp
to remember
to weigh anchor
appease hunger, keep from starving

cōsiliō ūti
pāce ūti

to adopt a plan
to enjoy peace

multum valēre
plūs valēre
plūrimum valēre
sub corōnā vēndere
in dēditionem venīre
in fidem venīre
in spem venīre
in bellō versārī
terga vertere
āversum hostem vidēre
aliquā rē vivere

to have great influence
to have greater influence
to have very great influence
to sell into slavery
to surrender
to put oneself under protection
to entertain hope
to engage in war
to turn and flee, to flee
to see the enemy in flight
to live on something

MISCELLANEOUS PHRASES

adversō colle
aequō animō

up the hill
with tranquil mind, without anxiety

capitis poena

capital punishment

ex equīs
ex itinere

on horseback
directly after marching

magnum iter
multā nocte

a forced march
late at night

nāvis longa
nāvis onerāria
novissimum agmen

battleship
transport
the rear

primā aestāte
primā lūce
primā nocte
primum agmen
proelium secundum

at the beginning of summer
at daybreak
at nightfall
the van
a successful battle

rēs adversae
rēs frūmentāria
rēs gestae
rēs militāris
rēs novae

misfortune, disasters
supplies
exploits, operations
warfare
a revolution

summa imperi
summus mōns

the supreme command
the top of the mountain

CHAPTER IV

SUMMARY OF SYNTAX

Agreement

1. A finite verb (i.e., a verb in the indicative or subjunctive) agrees with its subject in person and number.

Insula est magna, the island is large.

2. In the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive, the participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject.

Divicō dux factus est, Divico was made leader.

3. A predicate noun or predicate adjective agrees with its subject in case.

(a) *Caesar imperātor factus est, Caesar was made general.*

(b) *Sciō Caesarem imperātōrem factum esse, I know that Caesar was made general.*

(c) *Insula est magna, the island is large.*

(d) *Sciō insulam esse magnam, I know that the island is large.*

4. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains.

Labienus, legātus decimae legiōnis, fuit fortis, Labienus, the lieutenant of the tenth legion, was brave.

5. An adjective, whether attributive or predicate, agrees with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs in gender, number, and case.

(a) *Dux nautae bonō donum dedit, the leader gave a gift to the good sailor.*

(b) *Nautae nostrī sunt bonī, our sailors are good.*

6. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case is determined by its use in its own clause.

Germani, quibuscum bellum gerimus, trans Rhēnum incolunt, the Germans, with whom we waged war, dwell across the Rhine.

7. The reflexive pronoun (*sui, sibi, sē, sē*) refers either to the subject of the clause in which it stands (direct reflexive) or to the subject of the principal clause (indirect reflexive).

(a) *Is sibi legationem suscepit, he took upon himself the office of envoy (direct reflexive).*

(b) *Caesar legatos iussit ad sē revertī, Caesar ordered the envoys to return to him (indirect reflexive).*

8. The possessive pronoun of the third person (*suus, -a, -um*) refers either to the subject of the clause in which it stands, or to the subject of the principal clause.

Helvētī sē suaque omnia Caesari dēdiderunt, the Helvetians surrendered themselves and all their possessions to Caesar.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS

Nominative

9. The subject of a finite verb (i.e., a verb in the indicative or subjunctive) is in the nominative.
Gallia est divisa in partēs trēs, *Gaul is divided into three parts.*
10. After the copula **sum**, **fiō**, *become*, **videor**, *seem*, and the passive voice of verbs meaning *call, choose, appoint, make*, and the like, a predicate noun or predicate adjective is in the nominative.
 Nōnnulli Gallī **Celtae** appellābantur, *some Gaul's were called Celts.*

Genitive

11. The possessive genitive is used with a noun to indicate the possessor.
 Militēs **Caesaris** fortiter pugnābam, *Caesar's soldiers used to fight bravely.*
12. The possessive genitive is used idiomatically with **causā**, *for the sake of*, **pridiē**, *the day before*, and **postridiē**, *the day after*. With **causā** the genitive always precedes.
Bellandī causā, *for the purpose of fighting.*
13. The subjective genitive is used with nouns having verbal ideas to denote the doer of an action.
 Memorīa **patrum nostrōrum**, *in the memory of our fathers.*
14. The objective genitive is used with nouns expressing action or feeling to denote the person or thing toward which the action or feeling is directed.
 (a) **Rēgnī** cupiditāte inductus Orgetorix cōduratiōnem fecit, *led by the desire for kingly power, Orgetorix made a conspiracy.*
 (b) Spēs **reditiōnis** sublata est, *the hope of returning was taken away.*
15. The adjectives **cupidus**, *desirous*, **perītus**, *skilled*, **imperītus**, *unskilled*, **memor**, *mindful*, and others of similar character are followed by the objective genitive.
 Galli cupidi **bellandī** erant, *the Gauls were desirous of waging war.*
16. The partitive genitive or the genitive of the whole is used with words denoting a part to indicate the whole to which the part belongs.
 (a) **Pars urbis** capta est, *a part of the city was taken.*
 (b) **Hōrum** fortissimi sunt Belgae, *of these the bravest are the Belgians.*
17. With cardinal numerals (except **milia**), **quidam**, *a certain one*, and **pauci**, *a few*, the ablative with **dē** or **ex** is used, instead of the partitive genitive.
 (a) **Unus ē filiīs** captus est, *one of the sons was captured*
 (b) **Pauci dē nostrīs** ceciderunt, *a few of our men fell.*
18. The genitive of quality or description is used to describe a person or thing, but only when the noun of quality is modified by an adjective.
 Belgae erant **magnae virtūtis**, *the Belgians were men of great courage.*

19. When the genitive of quality is modified by a numeral, the genitive is called a genitive of measure.

Mūrum sēdecim pedum perdūxit, he built a sixteen-foot wall.

Note: There is very little difference between the genitive of quality and the ablative of quality (52), but the genitive **must** be used when the noun is modified by a numeral.

Dative

20. The indirect object of a verb is in the dative. This dative is used especially with verbs of *telling, reporting, and giving*.

Mihi pecūniam dedit, he gave the money to me, he gave me the money.

21. The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs **cōfidō**, *trust*, **crēdō**, *believe*, **faveō**, *favor*, **imperō**, *command*, **noceō**, *harm*, **parcō**, *spare*, **pāreō**, *obey*, **persuādeō**, *persuade*, **placeō**, *please*, **resistō**, *resist*, **studeō**, *be eager for*, and others of like meaning.

(a) *Caesar hostibus perpercit, Caesar spared the enemy.*

(b) *Militēs imperātōrī pārent, the soldiers obey the general.*

22. The verbs enumerated in 21 are used impersonally in the passive. The dative of the indirect object is retained.

Militī persuāsum est, the soldier was persuaded.

23. The dative of the indirect object is used with some verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **dē**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, and **super**.

(a) *Caesar Gallis bellum intulit, Caesar made war on the Gauls.*

(b) *Caesar Labiēnum legiōnī praefecit, Caesar put Labienus in charge of the legion.*

24. The dative is used with adjectives meaning *near, fit, friendly, pleasing, like*, and their opposites.

Dumnorix Helvētiīs erat amicus, Dumnorix was friendly to the Helvetians.

25. The dative of purpose is used to express the purpose of an action.

Locum castrīs dēlēgit, he chose a place for a camp.

26. The dative of purpose is often accompanied by a dative denoting the person interested in the action (dative of reference). This construction is called the double dative.

Hōc est magnō impedimentō nōbīs, this is a great hindrance to us.

27. The possessor may be expressed by the dative with some part of **sum** (dative of the possessor).

Mihi est in animō ire, I have it in mind to go, I intend to go.

28. The dative of agent is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation to denote the person upon whom the obligation rests.

Hōc nōbīs faciendum est, this must be done by us, we must do this

Accusative

29. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.
Helvētīi Orgetorigem dēlēgērunt, the Helvetians chose Orgetorix.
30. Verbs meaning *name, choose, call, and make* usually take a predicate accusative along with the direct object.
 (a) *Eum rēgem cōstituit, he made him king.*
 (b) *Caesarem certiōrem faciunt, they inform Caesar.*
31. The verb *rogō, ask*, takes two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing.
Mē sententiam rogāvit, he asked me my opinion.
32. With the verbs *petō* and *quaerō, ask*, the person is expressed by the ablative with *ab, dē, or ēx* (ablative of source), and the thing by the accusative.
Pācem ab Rōmānīs petivērunt, they sought peace from the Romans.
33. Duration of time is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.
Paucōs diēs morātī sunt, they delayed a few days.
34. Extent of space is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.
Tria milia passuum prōcessit, he advanced three miles.
35. The verb *trādūcō, lead across*, takes two accusatives, one the object of *dūcō*, and the other governed by *trā (trāns)*.
Militēs flūmen trādūxit, he led the soldiers across the river.
36. The place to which is expressed by the accusative with the prepositions *ad* or *in*.
Caesar in Galliam contendit, Caesar hastened into Gaul.
37. With names of towns and *domus*, the place to which is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.
Caesar Rōmam ire contendit, Caesar hastened to go to Rome.
38. The subject of the principal clause in an indirect statement is in the accusative.
Caesar dicit Belgās esse fortēs, Caesar says that the Belgians are brave.

Ablative

39. Separation is expressed by the ablative, usually with the prepositions *ā (ab), dē, ē (ex)*.
Rhōdanus provinciam ab Helvētiis dividit, the Rhone separates the province from the Helvetians.
40. The verbs *caveo, lack, dēsistō, desist from, liberō, free from, and prohibeō, keep from* regularly take the ablative of separation without a preposition.
Suis finibus ē prohibent, they keep them from their territory.
41. The place from which is expressed by the ablative with the prepositions *ā (ab), dē, ē (ex)*.
Dē mūrō, down from the wall.

42. With names of towns and **domus**, the place from which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.
Rōmā profectus est, he set out from Rome.
43. The place in which is expressed by the ablative with the preposition **in**.
Erant duae factionēs in Galliā, there were two parties in Gaul.
44. With **locus**, in the singular and plural, and several other nouns of place when modified by **tōtus**, the place in which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.
Multis locis, in many places.
45. With names of towns and **domus**, the place in which is expressed by the locative.
Rōmae. at Rome; domī, at home.
46. Means is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.
Partem hostium gladiis interfecerunt, they killed a part of the enemy with swords.
47. The deponents **utor**, *use*, and **potior**, *get possession of*, take the ablative of means.
Castris potiti sunt, they got possession of the camp.
48. Cause may be expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.
Gratiā plurimum poterat. he was very powerful because of his popularity.
49. With a verb in the passive voice, the personal agent is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**.
Ab exploratoribus certior factus est, he was informed by scouts.
50. The manner of an action is expressed by the ablative with **cum**, but **cum** may be omitted if the ablative is modified by an adjective.
 - (a) *Cum studiō labōrat, he works with eagerness (eagerly).*
 - (b) *Magnō cum studiō labōrat, he works with great eagerness, or*
 - (c) *Magnō studiō labōrat, he works with great eagerness.*
51. The degree of difference between two objects or actions is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.
 - (a) *Sum pede altior quam Mārcus, I am a foot taller than Marcus.*
 - (b) *Paucis ante diebus, a few days before.*
52. The ablative of quality or description (without a preposition) is used to describe a person or thing, but only when the noun of quality is modified by an adjective.
Hominēs inimicō animō, men of unfriendly attitude of mind.

53. The ablative without a preposition is used to denote in what respect something is true (ablative of specification or respect).
Helvētīi reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, the Helvetians surpass the rest of the Gauls in bravery.
54. The adjectives **dignus**, *worthy*, and **indignus**, *unworthy*, take the ablative of specification.
Sunt dignī honōre, they are worthy of honor.
55. Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with **cum**.
Cum legiōne decimā profectus est, he set out with the tenth legion.
56. A noun or a pronoun with a present or perfect participle in agreement may be used in the ablative case to form an ablative absolute.
Rēgnō occupātō, tōtius Galliae potītī sunt, having seized the supreme power, they became masters of all Gaul.
57. In the ablative absolute construction, an adjective, or a second noun may take the place of the participle.
 (a) *Sēquanis invītis, against the will of the Sequani.*
 (b) *Caesare cōnsule, in the consulship of Caesar.*
58. Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.
 (a) *Diē tertiō pervēnit, he arrived on the third day.*
 (b) *Paucis annis omnes ex Galliā pellentur, within a few years all will be driven from Gaul.*
59. The ablative of accordance is used to denote that in accordance with which anything is done or is true.
Mōribus suis Orgetorīgem cōgērunt, in accordance with their customs they compelled Orgetorix.

SYNTAX OF VERBS

60. A primary tense of the indicative is followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive; a secondary tense of the indicative is followed by a secondary tense of the subjunctive.
61. (a) **Primary tenses**
Indicative: present, future, future perfect.
Subjunctive: present (incomplete action), perfect (completed action).
- (b) **Secondary tenses**
Indicative: imperfect, perfect, pluperfect.
Subjunctive: imperfect (incomplete action), pluperfect (completed action).

Table for Sequence of Tenses

Tenses of Verb in Principal Clause		Tenses of Subjunctive in Subordinate Clause	
		Incomplete Action	Completed Action
Primary	Present Future Future Perfect	Present	Perfect
Secondary	Imperfect Perfect Pluperfect	Imperfect	Pluperfect

Note: By incomplete action is meant action not finished before that of the main verb; by completed action is meant action finished before that of the main verb.

62. A clause expressing the purpose of the action of the verb in the principal clause takes the present or imperfect subjunctive introduced by **ut**, *in order that*, or **nē**, *in order that not*; the tense of the subjunctive is determined by the rule for the sequence of tenses (60-61).

- (a) Puer cum studiō labōrat **ut laudētur**, *the boy works zealously that he may be praised.*
 (b) Fortiter pugnāverunt **nē urbs caperētur**, *they fought bravely in order that the city might not be taken.*

63. If the principal clause contains a definite antecedent, the purpose clause is regularly introduced by a relative pronoun.

Militēs misit **quī** hostēs **oppugnārent**, *he sent soldiers to attack the enemy.*

64. If the purpose clause contains a comparative of either an adjective or adverb, *in order that* is translated by **quō**.

Oppidum mūnivit **quō** **facilius** hostēs prohibēret, *he fortified the town in order that he might keep off the enemy more easily.*

65. The following verbs are followed by substantive clauses of purpose introduced by **ut** or **nē**:

hortor, urge
imperō, command
mandō, command
moneō, advise

persuadeō, persuade
peto, ask, beg
postulō, demand
rogō, ask

Helvētiīs **persuāsit ut** dē finibus **exīrent**, *he persuaded the Helvetians to leave their country.*

66. A clause expressing the result of the action of the verb in the principal clause takes the subjunctive introduced by **ut**, *so that*, or **ut nōn**, *so that not*; the tense of the subjunctive is determined by the rule for the sequence of tenses.

Pueri tam boni sunt ut ab omnibus laudentur, the boys are so good that they are praised by everybody.

67. The verbs **accidit**, *it happens*, **fit**, *it happens*, **faciō**, *bring it about*, and **efficiō**, *bring it about*, are followed by substantive clauses of result introduced by **ut** or **ut nōn**.

Accidit ut luna esset piena, it happened that there was a full moon.

68. A causal clause introduced by **quod**, *because*, takes the indicative when the writer or speaker gives his own reason, but the subjunctive when the writer or speaker gives another person's reason.

(a) *Dumnorix Helvētīs erat amicus, quod ex ea civitate Orgetorix's filiam in matrimōnium dūxerat, Dumnorix was friendly to the Helvetians because out of that state he had married a daughter of Orgetorix.*

(b) *Legiō Caesarī grātiās ēgit, quod optimum iudiciū fēcisset, the legion thanked Caesar because he had expressed a very favorable opinion.*

69. A causal clause introduced by **cum**, *since*, always takes the subjunctive.

Cum aeger sim, tecum non ibo, since I am ill, I shall not go with you.

70. A temporal clause introduced by **cum**, *when*, referring to present time takes the present indicative.

Cum aere aliēnō premuntur, when they are overcharged by debt.

71. A temporal clause introduced by **cum**, *when*, referring to future time takes the future or future perfect indicative.

Cum domum redierō, tibi scribam, when I return home, I shall write to you.

72. A temporal clause introduced by **cum**, *when*, takes some past tense of the indicative if it denotes the time at which the action of the principal verb took place.

Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, principes erant Aedui, when Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were leaders.

73. A temporal clause introduced by **cum**, *when*, takes the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive to describe the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the principal verb (**cum**-circumstantial clause).

Cum civitas iūs suū exsequi cōnārētur, Orgetorix mortuus est, when the state was attempting to enforce its authority, Orgetorix died.

74. A temporal clause introduced by **ut** or **ubi**, *when*, **postquam**, *after*, and **simul atque**, *as soon as*, takes the indicative, usually the perfect, sometimes the historical present.

Ubi id cōspexit, signum militibus dedit, when he noticed this, he gave the signal to the soldiers.

75. A temporal clause introduced by **antequam** or **priusquam**, *before*, takes the indicative when the subordinate verb denotes an actual fact (usually after a negative), but the subjunctive when the subordinate verb denotes an expected event.
- (a) **Neque** fugere cōstitērunt **priusquam** ad flūmen pervēnērunt, *and they did not cease to flee before, (until) they reached the river.*
 - (b) **Priusquam** quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, *before he should attempt anything, he ordered Diviciacus to be called to him.*
76. A temporal clause introduced by **dum**, *while*, takes the present indicative usually translated by the English past progressive.
Dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūtiātum est, *while these things were going on, word was brought to Caesar.*
77. A temporal clause introduced by **dum**, *until*, takes the indicative when the subordinate verb denotes an actual fact, but the subjunctive when the subordinate verb denotes an expected event.
- (a) Domī manēbam **dum** pater rediit, *I stayed at home until my father returned.*
 - (b) Domī manēbam **dum** pater rediret, *I stayed at home until my father should return.*
78. A concessive clause introduced by **cum**, *although*, takes the subjunctive.
Cum ad vesperum pugnātum sit, aversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit, *although the battle lasted till evening, no one could see the enemy turned to flight.*
79. A relative clause which merely tells what person or thing is meant by the antecedent or which merely states an additional fact about the antecedent takes the indicative.
Tertiam partem Galliae eī incolunt **quī** ipsōrum linguā Celtae appelluntur, *the third part of Gaul is inhabited by those who in their own language are called Celts.*
80. A relative clause which describes the antecedent by stating some characteristic takes the subjunctive (relative clause of characteristic or description).
Unus erat **quī** addūcī nōn posset, *he was the only one who could not be persuaded.*
81. Relative clauses of characteristic are especially common after the following expressions:
Unus est quī, *he is the only one who*
Sōlus est quī, *he is the only one who*
Est quī, *there is some one who*
Sunt quī, *there are some who*
Quis est quī, *who is there who*
Nēmō est quī, *there is no one who*
82. Verbs of *fearing* are followed by substantive clauses with the subjunctive introduced by **nē**, *that, lest*, or **ut**, *that . . . not*.
- (a) Hostēs verēbantur **nē** exercitus noster ad eōs addūcerētur, *the enemy feared that our army would be led against them.*
 - (b) **Veritus sum ut** veniret, *I feared that he would not come.*

83. Verbs of *hindering, preventing, and refusing* are followed by substantive clauses with the subjunctive introduced by **nē** or **quōminus** if the principal verb is positive, but by **quīn** if the principal verb is negative.
- (a) **Dēterrēre possunt nē maior multitudō trādūcātur**, *they can prevent a greater host from being brought over.*
 - (b) **Nāvēs ventō tenēbantur quōminus** in eundem portum venīre **possent**, *the ships were prevented by the wind from being able to reach the same harbor.*
 - (c) **Germānī retinērī nōn poterant quīn tēla conicerent**, *the Germans could not be restrained from hurling javelins.*
84. The verb **prohibeō** regularly takes the accusative and the infinitive. **Belgae Teutonōs intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuērunt**, *the Belgians prevented the Teutons from entering their country.*
85. Negative expressions of *doubting* are followed by substantive clauses with the subjunctive introduced by **quīn**.
Nōn dubium erat quīn Helvētīi plurimum possent, *there was no doubt that the Helvetians were the most powerful.*
86. Conditions which may be either true or false (simple conditions) take the indicative. The tense is the same as that found in the English sentence, except that in a simple condition referring to future time (sometimes called future more vivid) the Latin uses the future or even the future perfect where the English uses the present tense.
- (a) **Sī adest, eum vidēmus**, *if he is present, we see him.*
 - (b) **Sī aderat, eum vidēbāmus**, *if he was present, we saw him.*
 - (c) **Sī aderit, eum vidēbimus**, *if he is present, we shall see him.*
87. Future less vivid (*should-would*) conditions take the present subjunctive in both clauses.
Sī adsit, eum videāmus, *if he should be present, we would (should) see him.*
88. Contrary to fact (unreal) conditions in present time take the imperfect subjunctive in both clauses.
Sī adesset, eum vidērēmus, *if he were present, we should see him.*
89. Contrary to fact (unreal) conditions in past time take the pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses.
Sī adfuisset, eum vidissēmus, *if he had been present, we should have seen him.*
90. The verb of a direct question is in the indicative.
Quis eum interfici iussit? *Who ordered him to be put to death?*
91. The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive; the tense of the subjunctive is determined by the rule for the sequence of tenses (60-61).
Rogat quis captivum interfici iusserit, *he asks who has ordered the captive to be put to death.*
92. The verb of a subordinate clause in indirect discourse is in the subjunctive; the tense of the subjunctive is determined by the rule for the sequence of tenses, depending on the introductory verb (60-61).
Dixit sē legātum vīdisse quem Caesar mīsisset, *he said that he had seen the envoy whom Caesar had sent.*

93. The verb of a principal clause in indirect discourse is in the present infinitive if its action is contemporaneous with that of the introductory verb.

(a) **Dīcit** eōs **pugnāre**, *he says that they are fighting.*

(b) **Dixit** eōs **pugnāre**, *he said that they were fighting.*

94. The verb of a principal clause in indirect discourse is in the perfect infinitive if its action occurred before that of the introductory verb.

(a) **Dīcit** eōs **pugnāvisse**, *he says that they have fought.*

(b) **Dixit** eōs **pugnāvisse**, *he said that they had fought.*

Note: The participle forming part of the perfect infinitive passive must agree with the subject in gender, number, and case.

95. The verb of a principal clause in indirect discourse is in the future infinitive if its action is subsequent to that of the introductory verb.

(a) **Dīcit** eōs **pugnātūrōs esse**, *he says that they will fight.*

(b) **Dixit** eōs **pugnātūrōs esse**, *he said that they would fight.*

Note: The participle forming part of the future infinitive active must agree with the subject in gender, number, and case.

96. The verbs **cōgō**, *compel*, **iubeō**, *order*, **patior**, *allow*, are followed by the object infinitive and subject accusative.

Militēs hostēs **oppugnāre iussit**, *he ordered the soldiers to attack the enemy.*

97. The following verbs are followed by the complementary infinitive:

audeō, *dare*

coepeī, *began*

cōnor, *try*

cōstituō, *determine*

contendō, *hasten*

dēbeō, *ought*

dubitō, *hesitate*

mātūrō, *hasten*

possum, *be able*

videor, *seem*

98. The genitive of the gerund or gerundive followed by **causā**, *for the sake of*, expresses purpose.

(a) **Videndī causā** vēnit, *he came to see.*

(b) **Oppidī videndī causā** vēnit, *he came to see the town.*

99. The accusative of the gerund or gerundive with **ad** expresses purpose.

(a) **Ad videndum** vēnit, *he came to see.*

(b) **Ad oppidum videndum** vēnit, *he came to see the town.*

100. The future active participle is used with the forms of **sum** to express a future or intended action (active periphrastic conjugation).

(a) **Sciō** quid **factūrus** sit, *I know what he will do.*

(b) **Tē** crās **visūrus** sum, *I intend to see you to-morrow.*

101. The future passive participle is used with the forms of **sum** to express necessity or obligation (passive periphrastic conjugation).

Militēs nobīs **mittendī** sunt, *we must send the soldiers.*

102. The supine in **—um** is used with verbs of motion to express purpose.

Lēgātōs ad **Caesarem** **mittunt** **rogātum** auxilium, *they send ambassadors to Caesar to ask for aid.*

103. The supine in **—ū** is used with certain adjectives as an ablative of specification.

Facile **factū**, *easy to do.*

CHAPTER V

SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION

*Compiled from Regents, College
Entrance, and other Standard Examination Papers*

(Students preparing for the **Regents Examinations** should cover the sentences contained in parts **A, B, C, D, E, F,** and **J**. Students preparing for other examinations should, in addition, cover sentences contained in parts **G, H, I**.)

Note: Numbers within parentheses refer to sections of Syntax, pp. 19 to 29.

A. PURPOSE CLAUSES

1. The German horsemen had come to give (62: 60) aid to the Roman legions (20).
2. The commander led his army across the river to attack the Gauls.
3. Allies came from many towns of Italy to bring grain to the army.
4. The lieutenants came together for one hour to hear Caesar's plan of battle.
5. My brother departed from the city to fight with the Romans in the province.
6. Our scouts hastened across the river in order that they might not be captured (62*b*) by the Gauls (49).
7. The Gauls were moving across the river in order to occupy the territory of our allies.
8. Two new legions were sent from Italy in order that the Romans might conquer the Helvetians.
9. At that time, our men marched from Italy in order to attack the Helvetians.
10. For a few days (33) Caesar remained in that place (44) in order that he might see the leaders of his allies.
11. The ambassadors remained for many hours (33) in order that they might hear Caesar's plans.
12. The commander came with great speed (50) in order that he might lead the tenth legion across the mountains.

13. Caesar gave weapons to his friends in order that they might be able to defend (97) themselves.
14. The leader sent one legion across the river to defend the large town.
15. The Helvetians are crossing the river in order to make a march through our province.
16. Caesar left his tenth legion in Gaul in order that they might fortify the town.
17. Messengers quickly set out to Caesar in order to announce the victory.
18. Ambassadors came to Caesar to complain in regard to this.
19. Caesar hastens with all his forces to capture this large town.
20. On that day (58) Caesar will send very brave soldiers to take (61a) the town.
21. He went to the general to give a message to him (20).
22. Caesar sent two lieutenants to find out the easiest route to the town (36).
23. We shall remain at Rome (45) a few days (33) in order that these things may not happen.
24. Caesar marched all day (33) in order that he might reach his camp before night.
25. On the same day he hastened to return (97) home (37) with two legions to encourage the people with a speech (46).
26. That he might not be cut off (**prohibeō**) from supplies (40), he set out for the nearest winter quarters (36) by forced marches (46).
27. The leader ordered the soldiers (21) to fortify (65; 60) the camp with speed (50).
28. After the camp had been fortified (56), Caesar ordered the cohorts (21) to attack (65) the enemy.
29. On the third night (58), the Gauls sent messengers from the neighboring province to seek peace.
30. Caesar ordered his lieutenant (21) to lead (65) two legions out of winter quarters.
31. The commander ordered his horsemen (21) to remain (65) in camp for ten days.
32. These tribes will not permit their neighbors (21) to go (65) through their lands.
33. Caesar urged his soldiers to join (65) battle with the enemy.

34. He ordered the lieutenants (21) to hasten (65) to the river before daybreak.
35. Caesar persuaded the Gauls (21) to furnish (65) boats.
36. Those whom he had with him (7) begged him not to fight (65) with this multitude of the enemy.
37. Mithridates had been sent by Caesar into Syria to ask (63) the allies to send (65) aid.
38. On that day Caesar sent messengers who (63) should choose a place for the camp (26).
39. Ambassadors will be chosen by the Germans (49) to go (63; 60) to Caesar with hostages (55).
40. Labienus sent a messenger to tell Caesar (20) that the enemy (38) were crossing (93) the river.
41. This he did in order that (64) he might see more quickly what he ought (91) to do (97).
42. Caesar ordered the cohorts (96) to come (96) together in order to speak to them about his plans.
43. After the soldiers had been defeated (56), ambassadors came with great speed to seek (62; 99) peace.
44. When Caesar was (73) in Gaul, the Germans sent envoys to him in order to seek peace.
45. Labienus ordered his men (96) to fortify (96) the camp in order that he might withstand the attack of the enemy.
46. Caesar placed these lieutenants (29) in charge of his legions (23) that they might be witnesses (*testis*) of the bravery of the soldiers.
47. Scouts were sent to find out into whose territory the enemy were making (91; 60) a march.
48. Having made peace (56), Caesar marched into this town to get grain.
49. After the Gauls were conquered (56; 74), Caesar went to Rome (37) to see (62; 98; 99; 102) his friends.
50. Crassus led his army out of the camp in order that he might attack the Sontiates.

B. RESULT CLAUSES

51. The scouts were so terrified (2) that they were not able (66; 60) to find out (97) the number of the enemy.
52. The time was so short (5) that the signal could not be given.

53. They were so eager (5) for war (15) that they neglected everything else.
54. So quickly was the attack made that the soldiers were unable to draw up the line of battle.
55. The Germans resisted the Romans (21) so fiercely that they could not advance.
56. The danger is so great that no one dares to go (97).
57. Caesar attacked the Germans so bravely that they fled into the woods.
58. The Gauls fought so fiercely that the enemy could not drive them back.
59. The soldiers fought so bravely that they captured the city within five hours (58).
60. The danger was so great that our men did not dare to resist them (21).
61. There was no state (9) so small that it did not send envoys to this council.
62. The Romans were so brave (3) that they captured (66; 60) the large town in three days (58).
63. The Romans fought so bravely for five days (33) that the Gauls could not (66) capture the town.
64. The soldiers marched so swiftly that they were able to cross (97) the river on the same day.
65. The Gauls were so brave that Caesar's horsemen were not able to capture the camp.
66. Our (*men*) fought so fiercely that the enemy were not able to conquer them.
67. Our (*men*) came out of the camp so quickly that the enemy were not able to defend themselves.
68. The fear of the Germans is so great that they are sending hostages to Caesar.
69. The army of the enemy was so large that Caesar's legions were in great danger.
70. The soldiers marched so swiftly that they crossed the river on the same day.
71. The tenth legion fought so bravely that the city was captured by the general (49) within a few hours (58).
72. The courage of our men was so great that the enemy wished to retreat quickly.

73. So great a number of the enemy had been killed that new messengers came to Caesar.
74. So swift was the arrival of our men that they were able to seize the town without a battle.
75. The fear of the enemy was so great that they decided to surrender their weapons.
76. The danger was so great that the troops wished to depart with speed (50).
77. The soldiers marched with so great speed (50) that they came to the river before night.
78. The army of the lieutenant was so large that the enemy was quickly overcome.
79. The garrison was so brave that the soldiers were not able to capture (97) it.
80. The war was so long that many brave soldiers were killed.
81. The men fought so fiercely that many were killed in battle.
82. There was so great a multitude (9) of the enemy drawn up in line of battle that our forces were not able to withstand the attack.
83. The Helvetians were so terrified by Caesar's (13) arrival (48) that they did not depart from the territory of the Lingones.
84. Caesar was so alarmed by these reports that he determined to wage war at once.
85. The Boii were so brave that the Aedui wished to use (97) their aid (47) in war.
86. The Veneti were so strong in ships (53) that they resisted the Romans (21) a long time.
87. This plan had seemed to them (20) so good that they followed it for seven years (33).

C. TEMPORAL CLAUSES

88. After the arrival of the Romans was announced (74), the enemy departed from the province with great speed (50).
89. After the enemy had been conquered (74; 56), the general ordered hostages (96) to be sent (96) to his camp.
90. When Caesar's enemies had departed (73) from the city, (his) legions seized Rome.
91. When the messengers had seen (73) the army of the enemy, they went back quickly to Caesar.

92. After the allies had been conquered, the Germans attempted to cross (97) the river.
93. When Ariovistus and Caesar had come together (73), the Germans attempted to kill the Roman horsemen.
94. When Cusidius had seen the horsemen of the enemy, he hastened to Caesar's camp.
95. When the soldiers had seen Caesar himself in the battle, they made a fierce attack on the enemy.
96. After the horsemen of the enemy had been defeated (74), the Romans remained in the province for three days (33).
97. When the leader had drawn up a line of battle, he ordered the soldiers (96) to fight (96) bravely.
98. When the Germans had come into the province, they were able to remain (97) for many years (33).
99. When the soldiers were coming together, it was announced that the Germans (38) were leading (93) horsemen across the river.
100. When the Germans had been seen across the river, the horsemen hastened into camp with great speed (50).
101. When the leaders had surrendered part of the hostages, they heard that few Roman ships (38) remained.
102. When the messenger had come, the soldiers knew that they would move (95) camp.
103. When the enemy had learned that Caesar had come (94), they quickly withdrew.
104. After the arrival of the army had been announced (74), ambassadors of the Gauls hastened to Caesar.
105. When the messenger of the Romans had come, the allies learned that Caesar (38) had crossed the river.
106. After the town had been captured (74; 56), the enemy sent ambassadors to Caesar concerning peace.
107. When the Germans were hastening into the territory of the allies, Caesar ordered his men (21) to collect (65; 61) a large army.
108. After the enemy had been defeated, Caesar sent ambassadors to the leaders of the Germans.
109. When the allies had attacked the town, Caesar, with large forces, hastened out of the province.

110. When they heard the enemy, the soldiers seized their weapons quickly.
111. After the king had been killed, the people departed from the city with great speed.
112. After the town had been captured, the soldiers killed all the citizens with swords (46).
113. When Caesar had conquered (73) the Gauls, he led his men into winter quarters.
114. After the Gauls had been conquered (74; 56), their towns were quickly occupied by the Romans (49).
115. When the Gauls had seen the multitude of the enemy, they sent envoys to Caesar (36).
116. When Labienus was fortifying (73) the camp, the Gauls attacked the neighboring towns.
117. After the lieutenant had been captured, the leader ordered his soldiers (96) to retreat (96) from the city.
118. When the army was led (73) by Caesar (49) into those territories, the enemy did not dare to make (97) war on him.
119. When the Germans had arrived (73) at the river, they were not able to cross on account of its depth.
120. When Caesar learned (74) through whose territory the Helvetians had gone (91), he sent instructions (*mandātum*) to those states in great haste.
121. When Caesar had heard this, he hurried with all his troops (55) to attack (62) the Nervii.
122. When the enemy had been conquered, the messenger ran with great speed (50) to the camp.
123. When Ariovistus came (74) to the place appointed for the conference, he took possession of the mound (47).
124. When Caesar had crossed the river, he fortified his camp and sent ambassadors to the nearest states.
125. When the fleet came (74), Brutus announced to Caesar that he (7; 28) was willing (93) to attack the enemy.
126. When they had thrown a multitude of soldiers around the wall (23), they brought forward the towers.
127. When the army had pitched camp, they saw the enemy on the top of the mountain.
128. When the Helvetians came to him, he ordered them (96) to surrender their (8) arms.

129. While these things were being done (76), Caesar ordered Vatinius (96) to come to Brundisium (37) with a fleet.
130. As soon as the bridge was completed (74), Caesar led his army over with the greatest possible speed.

D. CAUSAL CLAUSES

131. Since (69) the lieutenant was not able to defend (97) the camp, he sent a messenger to Caesar.
132. Since the Gauls were not able to defend the town, the leader ordered them (96) to retreat (96) into the forest.
133. At Caesar's arrival (58) the enemy fought bravely, since they were defending their own territory.
134. Since the leader was not able to defend the city, he quickly led his army out of the territory.
135. Since the river was very deep, the troops decided to remain (97) in camp for a few days (33).
136. Since the soldiers had fought bravely, the commander ordered them (96) to remain (96) in camp.
137. Since a Roman camp was being attacked, Caesar, with two legions, came with great speed.
138. Since the danger is great, the Romans quickly seize their swords.
139. Since our soldiers did not know (69) the fords, they were thrown into confusion by the enemy (49).
140. Since the Helvetians (27) had nothing (9) at home (45), Caesar ordered the Allobroges (96) to give (96) them a supply of grain.
141. Since they have persuaded you (21), the town must not be seized (101).
142. Since they could not find their friends, they returned in great haste to us (36).
143. Since your brother is fighting for (prō) his country, you ought to write (97) a letter to him.
144. Since the Helvetians were very powerful, they fought with their neighbors (55) in daily battles (46).
145. Since there was no danger, the men went off to pillage (62) the neighboring farms.
146. Since a very small part of the summer remained, Caesar was unwilling to wage war on this tribe.

147. I could not make war on the Germans because the consul was unwilling (68) to aid me.
148. The Suebi began to return home (37) because this battle had been reported (68) across the Rhine.
149. Orgetorix made a conspiracy against the Roman people because he desired (68) to seize the throne in his own country.
150. The hostages fled into the woods that day (58) because they feared the Belgians.
151. The soldiers were unwilling to advance on that day (58) because there was a new moon.
152. They cannot march through our city because it is well fortified.

E. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

153. Caesar learned from the messenger what was being done (91; 60) among the Belgians.
154. Ariovistus asked why Caesar had not led (91; 60) his forces across the river.
155. The soldiers asked why Caesar's allies had not given grain to them (7).
156. The Romans in the city asked why Caesar had fought with the Gauls for ten years (33).
157. The commander asked why the legions had not fought on that day (58).
158. Cicero knew why the Gauls had come from the town so quickly.
159. Labienus knew why Caesar had not captured the town at that time.
160. The allies knew why the general had not defended the city for many days.
161. Labienus knew why our (*men*) were not able to attack the town at that time.
162. Caesar asked why the allies had not carried the grain to the town.
163. The lieutenant asked why the allies had not brought (91; 60) grain for many days (33).
164. The troops marched without heavy baggage for many hours and asked why aid had not come (91; 60).
165. For many years he had wished to know what the men of that state were doing.

166. The troops understood why grain had been carried from the fields into the city.
167. On the same day Caesar asked why the Gauls were not giving grain to his soldiers (20).
168. The leader asked why the Gauls had not given grain to the Roman soldiers.
169. At that time the senate did not understand why Caesar did not send help.
170. The lieutenants asked why the general wished to attack the bridge that night.
171. Labienus was not able to learn what the enemy did at that time.
172. The general knew why the soldiers had not defended the city at that time.
173. Caesar inquired of the ambassadors (32) whom (6) he saw in the senate why they had come (91; 60) to Rome (37).
174. The enemy quickly learned why the Romans had attacked (91; 60) this strongly fortified hill.
175. Did not (*nōnne*) Ariovistus ask (90) Caesar (31) why he had come (91) with an army into that part of Gaul?
176. It was not easy (*neuter*) to say (*subject infinitive*) what men the enemy had killed in battle.
177. After receiving this letter (56), I knew why my friend had not come home (37).
178. We asked the boy (31) whom we saw in the city why he had not returned with his brother.
179. Caesar asked them why they wished to march through his province.
180. The general inquired how large (3) the enemy's forces were.
181. He himself asked why larger forces had not been given to him (7; 20).
182. Who will inform us in what direction the enemy marched (60)?
183. He asked what Volusenus had ascertained (*reperiō*) about the harbors and coasts of Britain.

F. INDIRECT DISCOURSE

184. The messenger said that the allies (38) had sent (94) grain to the enemy.

185. On the same day Labienus heard that aid had been sent (94) by Caesar.
186. Caesar knew that these men would not send (95 and Note) aid to him (7).
187. Ariovistus knew that the Romans had led many troops into Gaul.
188. The general said that he (7) would lead (95 and Note) the army across the river.
189. Caesar heard that the Germans had led a large army across the river.
190. The messengers said that the Roman forces had fought with great courage (50).
191. The messenger said that the general would send envoys about peace to Caesar.
192. The Gauls thought that they (7) would defeat Caesar's army very quickly.
193. Caesar said that the cavalry would remain, and ordered one legion (96) to bring (96) grain.
194. Caesar thought that aid (38) had been sent (94 and Note) from Britain to his enemies in Gaul.
195. The leaders knew that they (7; 38) could not conquer the powerful legions.
196. The messenger announced that many horsemen had departed quickly at daybreak.
197. The messenger thought that the Roman army had departed in the fourth watch (58).
198. Labienus said that the mountain had been occupied by the Roman army for two days (33).
199. The leader said that he could easily defend (97) the city with his large army.
200. The leader said that he would not defend (95 and Note) the city since there were (69) so few soldiers (9).
201. The general thought that his army had fought very bravely.
202. Caesar said that he could not surrender the hostages to the enemy.
203. He says that he (38; 7) is (93) ready (3) to begin.
204. He says that the chiefs of the Belgians have sought (94) safety in flight (46).

205. They thought that these machines could (93) not be moved (97).
206. He did not know that for many years (33) there had been a confederacy (38) of the nations of Gaul.
207. The messenger said that the next night (58) the general would set out (95 and Note) from Rome (42) with all his troops.
208. The soldiers knew that they (7) were led (93) by a man of very great courage (18; 52).
209. The Belgians had learned that the enemy had moved their (8) camp.
210. The ambassadors replied to Caesar (20) that within three days (58) they would do (95) that which they had promised (92; 60).
211. The lieutenant said he would not surrender (95 and Note) his forces to the leaders (20) of the state.
212. He says that he has been wounded (94 and Note) and asks where the camp is (91).
213. We know that the forces of Caesar, because of their great courage, are in the midst of the fight.
214. Labienus reported that the enemy had crossed (94) the river and were holding (93) the mountain.
215. The soldiers knew they were waging war in the territory where many years (51) before the Roman armies had fought (92).
216. They say that they will not arrive home (37) before dawn.
217. Caesar says that he will bring aid to his brave soldiers as soon as possible.
218. Some said that Caesar had moved his camp to another place after the enemy had been defeated (56).
219. At sunset, Caesar was informed that aid was coming from Rome (42).
220. After these things had been accomplished (56), we thought we ought to await the arrival of the cavalry.
221. Caesar had heard that ambassadors had been sent by the Gauls to seek (63; 98; 99; 102) peace.
222. The Germans said that they would not give up the territory that they had won (92) by their valor.
223. The same messenger said that the Belgians had made peace

with their neighbors and that they had driven the Germans across the Rhine.

224. The Helvetians said that they (7) would not give Caesar (20) the hostages that he demanded (92).

225. The prisoners said that they had sent a messenger to Caesar on that day.

226. The Remi said that they were ready (3) to give hostages and that they would surrender (95 and Note) their arms.

227. They said ambassadors had been sent because they feared (92) the barbarians.

228. They answered him (20) that they were unable to use any other road (47).

229. Ambassadors sent by the Gauls said that they wished to confer with Caesar.

230. The Helvetians say that the enemy will send ambassadors to seek peace (*see sentence 221*).

231. The commander thought that in number (53) of men the Helvetians were the most powerful in Gaul.

232. One of the soldiers (17) reported that the king was retreating with all his forces.

233. Commius said that Caesar's legions would come (95 and Note) on the third day.

234. Caesar said that he was able to send their legions into Gaul.

235. The Helvetians promised to go out (95) of their territory.

236. The lieutenant reported that the camp of the enemy had been captured at sunset.

237. The Bellovaci heard that Caesar was coming into their country with three legions.

G. CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

238. Though Caesar ordered (78) the Helvetians (96) to bring all their weapons to him (7), yet they were unwilling to do it.

239. Although Labienus had been killed (78) by the enemy, his army was not put to flight.

240. Although he was a brave soldier (10), he did not wish to go with the others to the top of the mountain.

241. Although Caesar wished to take the town, nevertheless he did not make an attack.

242. Although this was his plan, his army marched so slowly

that many of the gates of the town were captured (66) before his arrival.

243. Although the soldiers were eager for battle (15), Caesar ordered them (96) not to make an attack.
244. Although Caesar did not know of the plans of the enemy, he decided to wait (97) until they should return (77).
245. Although the king used the river (47), nevertheless Caesar sailed so swiftly that he arrived (66) there within a few hours (58).

H. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH VERBS OF FEARING

246. Our allies did not fear that they would be defeated (82; 60) by the enemy.
247. He feared that he could (82; 60) not easily resist (97) both the old and the new forces (21) of Ariovistus.
248. Caesar feared that the Germans would cross (82) from their own territory into the territory of the Helvetians on account of the fertility (*bonitās*) of the fields.
249. They feared that the Romans would not pass through their territory without violence.
250. I fear that the enemy may get possession of our baggage (47).
251. Our soldiers feared that Caesar could not supply grain because of the winter.
252. Are you afraid (90) that the enemy will attack (82) us during the night (58)?
253. We fear that he will not come.
254. I fear that Ariovistus will not seek (82; 60) Caesar's friendship.
255. Crassus feared that the auxiliaries would desert him (7).
256. The legions feared that they would be surrounded (82).
257. They were afraid that aid would not be sent to the town.

I. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

258. If they send (86) legates to Caesar, he will make peace with them.
259. If the consul had not been (89) brave (5), the whole city would have been taken (89) by the enemy.
260. If a battle is fought (86), we shall conquer on account of the great number of our soldiers.

261. If the soldiers do not have enough food (16), they can not fight for many hours (33) against the enemy.
262. If Caesar had not set out (89) at this time, they would have collected larger forces.
263. Caesar would have been able to conquer the enemy, if he had had a larger number of ships.
264. If the foot soldiers should fight (87) more bravely, the enemy would not be able to defeat the cavalry.
265. If Labienus should hear (87) the signal, he would lead out all his troops to battle.
266. Had they been willing (89) to make peace, they would have been willing to give hostages.
267. I would have ordered (89) you to return (96) home (37), if I had been with you.
268. If they send (86) hostages, we will spare them (21).
269. If he had remained in Gaul (43), he would have captured the city.
270. If the Gauls had marched more swiftly, they would have surprised (**opprimere**) their foes.

J. MISCELLANEOUS SENTENCES

271. After their general had been killed (56), the Gauls were defeated by Caesar's army.
272. After the Gauls had been defeated (56), the lieutenant ordered them (96) to give hostages to Caesar.
273. After the army of the enemy had been defeated, the leader ordered his (*men*) to come into camp.
274. After the battle had been fought, the great courage of the tenth legion was announced by the general.
275. After (*their*) army had been conquered, the enemy quickly sent ambassadors to the Roman camp.
276. After the army of the enemy had been captured, the soldiers pitched camp in the territory of our allies.
277. After peace had been made, many hostages were handed over to Caesar by the enemy.
278. For many hours the Roman troops marched into the camp with heavy baggage.
279. "I am going to return (100) to my house," replied the man; and having said this (56), he set forth.

280. Why did not the enemy cross (90) the marsh that is very near their town (24)?
281. Why do you not recall the soldiers and form your line of battle?
282. Caesar said, "Soldiers, resist the attack (21) of the enemy."
283. He ordered his whole army (96) to be brought together, since he wished (69) to besiege the city.
284. Fortify the camp with a very deep ditch (46).
285. Why do you not attack their ships?
286. This battle was fought very fiercely by the Gauls and the Romans.
287. Caesar placed Labienus in charge of the legions (23) that (6) he had sent from Rome (42).
288. Was it not (nōnne) more difficult to make a bridge than to cross this river by boats?
289. The soldiers who were coming as a guard (25) from the camp were able to reach the place quickly by forced marches.
290. This river is three feet (51) wider than the river that he crossed.
291. The wagons that brought the supplies to us halted outside the camp.
292. At sunset (58), Caesar is said to have ordered his soldiers (96) to give thanks for their victory.
293. Procillus went with Metius as an envoy (4) to the camp of the Germans.
294. The Roman people made war on all who were attempting to go through the province.
295. Soldiers are not always willing to listen to the commands of their leaders.
296. The legion whose leader was slain by the cavalry (49) of the Gauls returned to the fight and drove the enemy into the woods.
297. Having delayed many days (33), our legions built a bridge and tried to return home (37).
298. The general led his army across the river with the captives whom he had taken.
299. After the new plans had been announced (56), the lieutenants ordered the soldiers to go into Italy.
300. The man whose letter you saw became a very loyal citizen (10) a few days (51) afterward.

CHAPTER VI

WORD FORMATION

Prefixes

Learn the meaning of each of the following prefixes and use each in two ways. first to form new Latin verbs from simple verbs; second, to form English derivatives. For example: **dūcō**, *lead* + **ab**, *away* = **abdūcō**, *lead away*. English derivative: **abduct**.

1. ā , ab , abs ,	<i>away, from.</i>
2. ad ,	<i>to, toward</i>
3. ante ,	<i>before</i>
4. circum ,	<i>around, about</i>
5. con ,	<i>with, together; entirely, thoroughly</i>
6. dē ,	<i>down from</i>
7. dis -,	<i>apart; not, un-</i>
8. ē , ex ,	<i>out of, from; thoroughly, completely</i>
9. in ,	<i>in, into</i>
10. in -,	<i>not, un-</i>
11. inter ,	<i>between</i>
12. ob ,	<i>against, toward</i>
13. per ,	<i>through; thoroughly, very</i>
14. post ,	<i>after</i>
15. prae ,	<i>before, at the head of</i>
16. prō ,	<i>before, forth, forward</i>
17. re -, red -,	<i>back, again</i>
18. sē -, sēd -,	<i>aside, apart</i>
19. sub ,	<i>under, from under</i>
20. super ,	<i>over, above</i>
21. trāns , trā -,	<i>across</i>

Some prefixes change their final consonants to make them like the initial consonants of the words to which they are prefixed. Such a change is called assimilation. For example:

ad	+	capiō	=	accipiō
con	+	locō	=	collocō
in	+	pōnō	=	impōnō
ob	+	ferō	=	offerō
sub	+	cēdō	=	succēdō

When a Latin verb is compounded with a prefix, short **ā** or short **ē** in the root of the verb is usually changed to short **i** before a single consonant. For example:

in	+	capiō	=	incipiō	re	+	teneō	=	retineō
re	+	capiō	=	recipiō	dē	+	faciō	=	dēficiō
ad	+	teneō	=	attineō	re	+	faciō	=	reficiō

Exercise 1

Divide each of the following compound words into its component parts, and show how the force of the prefix affects the meaning of each:

- | | | |
|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. dēligō | 26. prōiciō | 51. colloquor |
| 2. sēditiō | 27. abstineō | 52. subeō |
| 3. commoveō | 28. praetor | 53. permultus |
| 4. influō | 29. intercēdō | 54. exclūdō |
| 5. traiciō | 30. efferō | 55. praecēdō |
| 6. succidō | 31. commūniō | 56. anteferō |
| 7. cōgō | 32. suscipiō | 57. redigō |
| 8. ēvocō | 33. praefficiō | 58. occurro |
| 9. diripiō | 34. excēdō | 59. iniquus |
| 10. attingō | 35. amittō | 60. trādō |
| 11. circumducō | 36. dēcidō | 61. adhibeō |
| 12. inimicitia | 37. reddō | 62. perficiō |
| 13. perfacilis | 38. prohibeō | 63. antecēdō |
| 14. dissimilis | 39. conveniō | 64. perfringō |
| 15. transmittō | 40. obtineō | 65. sustineō |
| 16. sēparō | 41. incertus | 66. accorro |
| 17. antepōnō | 42. respiciō | 67. circumdō |
| 18. redeō | 43. abiciō | 68. permagnus |
| 19. obiciō | 44. afferō | 69. dimitto |
| 20. perterreō | 45. subducō | 70. infinitus |
| 21. contineō | 46. repellō | 71. sēcēdō |
| 22. prōvideō | 47. oppōnō | 72. āvertō |
| 23. sustineō | 48. convocō | 73. dēducō |
| 24. difficilis | 49. ēducō | 74. cōnferō |
| 25. abstrahō | 50. interpōnō | 75. referō |

Prefixes are also used in English to form compounds from simple words; as in Latin, some change their final consonants to make them like the initial consonants of the words to which they are prefixed. For example: **in** + **legible** = **illegible**.

Exercise 2

Give the prefix and root word of each of the following, and show how the force of the prefix affects the meaning of each:

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. translate | 16. affix | 31. educe | 46. illegal |
| 2. abstract | 17. illuminate | 32. antecedent | 47. commotion |
| 3. precede | 18. accede | 33. collect | 48. transfer |
| 4. depend | 19. depose | 34. abundance | 49. occur |
| 5. correct | 20. announce | 35. seclude | 50. evoke |
| 6. inactive | 21. secede | 36. preside | 51. pervade |
| 7. return | 22. attend | 37. disarm | 52. exclude |
| 8. offer | 23. proceed | 38. recede | 53. absent |
| 9. dislocate | 24. subscribe | 39. effect | 54. deter |
| 10. suspend | 25. abrupt | 40. suggest | 55. dishonest |
| 11. acquire | 26. circumference | 41. perfect | 56. impose |
| 12. separate | 27. irruption | 42. abstain | 57. cohere |
| 13. immigrant | 28. support | 43. deduce | 58. ascribe |
| 14. propel | 29. differ | 44. avocation | 59. cppose |
| 15. dispel | 30. ignoble | 45. egress | 60. concur |

Suffixes

A. Suffixes Used to Form Nouns from Verbs

<i>Suffix</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Illustration</i>
1. -tor (-sor)	one who	ōrā-tor , one who speaks, i.e., a speaker dēfēn-sor , one who defends, i.e., a defender
2. -a	one who	scrib-a , one who writes, i.e., a clerk
3. -or	activity, condition, state	am-or , love
4. -iō	} action, result of an action	{ leg-iō , the result of choosing, i.e., a legion dēdi-tiō , a surrender dēfēn-siō , defense conven-tus , assembly, meeting cūr-sus , running, course caed-ēs , slaughter cul-tūra , tilling, cultivation aedific-ium , building
5. -tiō (-siō)		
6. -tus (-sus)		
7. -ēs		
8. -tūra		
9. -ium		
10. -men	} means, result of an action	{ nō-men , means of knowing, i.e., an name ōrnā-mentum , decoration pā-bulum , fodder vinc-ulum , chain arā-trum , a plow
11. -mentum		
12. -bulum		
13. -ulum		
14. -trum		

B. Suffixes Used to Form Nouns from Nouns

<i>Suffix</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Illustration</i>
1. -ia	} condition, characteristic	{ victōr-ia , victory civi-tās , citizenship servi-tūs , slavery
2. -tās		
3. -tūs		
4. -ātus	office	cōnsul-ātus , consulship

C. Suffixes Used to Form Nouns from Adjectives

<i>Suffix</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Illustration</i>
1. -ia	} quality, condition	{ audāc-ia , boldness trīsti-tia , sadness celeri-tās , swiftness magni-tūdō , greatness
2. -tia		
3. -tās		
4. -tūdō		

Exercise 3

Define each of the following words according to its etymology:

Model: *ōrātor* = *ōrā* (from *ōrō*, *speak*) + *tor* (*one who*) = *one who speaks*, i.e., a speaker.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>adventus</i> | 17. <i>excursiō</i> | 33. <i>monumentum</i> |
| 2. <i>aegritūdō</i> | 18. <i>exercitus</i> | 34. <i>mūnimentum</i> |
| 3. <i>agmen</i> | 19. <i>exitus</i> | 35. <i>mūnitio</i> |
| 4. <i>agricultūra</i> | 20. <i>explōrātor</i> | 36. <i>nōbilitās</i> |
| 5. <i>amicitia</i> | 21. <i>fortitūdō</i> | 37. <i>offensiō</i> |
| 6. <i>armātūra</i> | 22. <i>iaculum</i> | 38. <i>perfuga</i> |
| 7. <i>auctōritās</i> | 23. <i>impedimentum</i> | 39. <i>praetor</i> |
| 8. <i>beneficium</i> | 24. <i>imperātor</i> | 40. <i>profectiō</i> |
| 9. <i>clāmor</i> | 25. <i>imperium</i> | 41. <i>prudentia</i> |
| 10. <i>concursum</i> | 26. <i>incola</i> | 42. <i>reditiō</i> |
| 11. <i>crūdēlitās</i> | 27. <i>iūmentum</i> | 43. <i>rōstrum</i> |
| 12. <i>cupiditās</i> | 28. <i>libertās</i> | 44. <i>scientia</i> |
| 13. <i>diligentia</i> | 29. <i>longitūdō</i> | 45. <i>sepultūra</i> |
| 14. <i>discessus</i> | 30. <i>magistrātus</i> | 46. <i>timor</i> |
| 15. <i>ēgressus</i> | 31. <i>maleficium</i> | 47. <i>victor</i> |
| 16. <i>ēruptiō</i> | 32. <i>memoria</i> | 48. <i>virtūs</i> |

Exercise 4

Define each of the following words according to its etymology:

Model: *descriptio* = *de*, *down* + *scrip* (from *scribo*, *write*) + *tion* (*denotes act or result*) = the act or result of writing down or describing.

- | | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>advent</i> | 11. <i>expulsion</i> | 21. <i>opposition</i> |
| 2. <i>agency</i> | 12. <i>injury</i> | 22. <i>prediction</i> |
| 3. <i>attitude</i> | 13. <i>inspection</i> | 23. <i>premonition</i> |
| 4. <i>avocation</i> | 14. <i>inspector</i> | 24. <i>protection</i> |
| 5. <i>benefactor</i> | 15. <i>intention</i> | 25. <i>punishment</i> |
| 6. <i>circumlocution</i> | 16. <i>intervention</i> | 26. <i>purity</i> |
| 7. <i>circumnavigation</i> | 17. <i>inventor</i> | 27. <i>recurrence</i> |
| 8. <i>collector</i> | 18. <i>magnitude</i> | 28. <i>spectator</i> |
| 9. <i>docility</i> | 19. <i>malediction</i> | 29. <i>submission</i> |
| 10. <i>excitement</i> | 20. <i>navigator</i> | 30. <i>suspicion</i> |

D. Suffixes Used to Form Adjectives from Verbs

Suffix	Meaning	Illustration
1. -ilis	able to be	fac-ilis , <i>able to be done</i> , i.e., easy
2. -bilis	able to be	mō-bilis , <i>able to be moved</i> , i.e., movable, fickle
3. -idus	condition	tim-idus , <i>being in a condition of fearing</i> i.e., timid

E. Suffixes Used to Form Adjectives from Nouns

Suffix	Meaning	Illustration
1. -ōsus	full of	pericul-ōsus, full of danger, i.e., dangerous
2. -eus	made of	ferr-eus, made of iron
3. -ālis	} pertaining to	nāv-ālis, pertaining to a ship, i.e., naval
4. -ānus		Rôm-ānus, pertaining to Rome, i.e., Roman
5. -āris		cōsul-āris, pertaining to a consul, i.e., consular
6. -ārius		legiōn-ārius, pertaining to a legion, i.e., legionary
7. -icus		bell-icus, pertaining to war, i.e., martial
8. -ilis		serv-ilis, pertaining to a slave, i.e., servile
9. -inus		Lat-inus, pertaining to Latium, i.e., Latin
10. -ivus		aest-ivus, pertaining to summer
11. -ius		patr-ius, pertaining to a father, i.e., ancestral

Exercise 5

Define each of the following adjectives according to its etymology:

Model 1: urbānus = urb (from urbs, city) + ānus (pertaining to) = pertaining to the city, i.e., of the city.

Model 2: legible = leg (from legō, read) + ible (able to be) = able to be read.

A

- | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. aureus | 6. frumentārius | 11. militāris |
| 2. bellicōsus | 7. Gallicus | 12. mūrālis |
| 3. captivus | 8. incredibilis | 13. oppidānus |
| 4. cupidus | 9. laudābilis | 14. otīōsus |
| 5. familiāris | 10. marinus | 15. rapidus |

B

- | | | |
|-------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. civic | 6. fertile | 11. mental |
| 2. copious | 7. fluid | 12. noble |
| 3. divine | 8. inaudible | 13. ocular |
| 4. domestic | 9. irrevocable | 14. puerile |
| 5. feminine | 10. laborious | 15. soluble |

F. Verbs Derived from Verbs

1. Frequentatives, expressing repeated or intensive action, are formed by adding the suffixes: -tō (-itō), or -sō to the stems of other verbs; as,
clām (from clāmō, shout) + itō (intensive suffix) = clāmitō, cry out loudly

iac (from iaciō, throw) + tō (intensive suffix) = iactō, throw about, toss

cur (from currō, run) + sō (intensive suffix) = cursō, run about

2. Inceptives, expressing the beginning of an action, are formed by adding the suffix -scō to the stems of other verbs; as,

timē (from timeō, be afraid of) + scō (inceptive suffix) = timēscō, begin to be afraid of, become afraid of

CHAPTER VII

DERIVATION

Since a very large number of English words has come, directly or indirectly, from Latin, special attention should be given to the derivation of such words. Accordingly, ten Latin verbs are assigned for each half year as a basis for study in derivation. From each of these verbs the pupil should be required to make a list of all the more important English derivatives. An optional list of ten verbs has been added for each half year in the belief that many teachers will wish to emphasize even more strongly this feature of the study of Latin.

The Required and Optional Lists for the First Half Year are as follows:

<i>Required</i>	<i>Optional</i>
1. servō	1. iūdicō
2. locō	2. pācō
3. vocō	3. parō
4. putō	4. pugnō
5. videō	5. spectō
6. moveō	6. habeo
7. dūcō	7. moneō
8. mittō	8. teneō
9. dicō	9. agō
10. capiō	10. cognōscō

Note—A suggested form of arrangement in this work follows:

Derivation Notebook (specimen page)

Type 1 (without definitions)

locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus—
place

locate, local, locality, location, locus,
collocate, collocation, dislocate, local-
ization, localize, locally, locative, loco-
motive, locomotor

Type 2 (with definitions)

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus—
—call

vocation—a *calling*, occupation
vocational—pertaining to a vocation or
calling
vocal—pertaining to *voice*
evoke—*call* out
convoke—*call* together
vocative—case of *calling*, case of address
revoke—*call* back, remand
invoke—*call* upon, ask for
invocation—a *calling* upon, a prayer

Type 3 (with examples of use in English)

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus— <i>send</i>	mission—He was sent on a mission to Europe
	missionary—He was sent as a missionary to China
	missive—The letter was a formidable missive
	missile—Stones were the missiles of early warfare
	transmit—They will transmit the message to us
	remission—He preached the remission of sins
	commit—She was committed to his care
	submit—They submitted to the inevitable
	submissive—The slave was not submissive
	omit—Omit the nonessential

The Required and Optional Lists for the Second Half Year are as follows:

<i>Required</i>	<i>Optional</i>
1. nāvigō	1. dō
2. doceō	2. veniō
3. timeō	3. fidō
4. sedeō	4. pōnō
5. scribō	5. terreō
6. vincō	6. trahō
7. sūmiō	7. pellō
8. faciō	8. cōsulō
9. iaciō	9. audeō
10. audiō	10. mūniō

The Required and Optional Lists for the Third Half Year are as follows:

<i>Required</i>	<i>Optional</i>
1. ōrō	1. mandō
2. portō	2. arbitror
3. stō	3. valeō
4. ferō	4. cadō
5. (in) colō	5. currō
6. regō	6. tribuō
7. legō	7. (ad) iungō
8. solvō	8. sequor
9. fugiō	9. tollō
10. expediō	10. vertō

EXAMPLES OF LATIN ROOTS AND THEIR LATIN AND ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

Certain easily intelligible Latin words not found in the vocabulary prescribed for a particular half year have been included.

The list of English words derived from them is not exhaustive; only the most important have been selected.

The following abbreviations are used:

n = noun a = adjective v = verb av = adverb

<i>Latin roots</i>	<i>Latin derivatives</i>	<i>English derivatives</i>
	(v) spectō	(n) aspect
	(n) spectātor	(v) inspect
	(n) spectāculum	(n) inspection
	(v) aspiciō (ad-spiciō)	(n) spectator
	(n) aspectus	(n) spectacle
	(v) circumspiciō	(a) spectacular
	(v) cōspiciō	(a) circumspect
	(v) perspiciō	(n) circumspection
	(v) prōspiciō	(n) species
	(v) respiciō	(a) conspicuous
		(a) suspicious
		(v) (n) suspect
		(n) perspective
		(n) prospect
		(a) prospective
		(n) prospector
		(v) (n) respect
		(a) respectable
	(v) retrōspiciō	(av) respectably
		(n) respectability
	(v) speculor (dep.)	(n) retrospect
		(n) retrospection
		(a) retrospective
		(v) speculate
		(n) speculator
		(n) speculation

2 ten

(v)	teneō	(a)	tenable
(a)	tenāx	(a)	tenacious
(n)	tenācītās	(a)	pertinacious
(v)	abstineō	(n)	tenacity
(n)	abstinentia	(v)	abstain
(v)	contineō	(n)	abstinence
(v)	continuo	(v)	contain
(v)	dētineō	(n) (a)	content
(v)	obtimeō	(v)	continue
(v)	pertineō	(a)	continual
(v)	retineō	(a)	continuous
(v)	sustineō	(v)	detain
		(n)	detention
		(v)	obtain
		(v)	pertain
		(v)	retain
		(v)	sustain
		(n)	sustenance
		(v)	maintain
		(v)	entertain
		(a)	pertinent
		(a)	impertinent
		(n)	tenant

3 cap

(v)	capiō	(v) (n)	capture
(n)	captivus	(n)	captive
(n)	captivitas	(n)	captivity
(v)	accipiō	(v)	accept
(v)	excipiō	(a)	acceptable
(v)	recipiō	(n)	acceptability
(v)	incipiō	(v)	except
(v)	dēcipiō	(n)	exception
(a)	capāx	(n)	receptacle
(v)	suspiciō	(n)	recipient
(v)	praecipiō	(a)	incipient
(v)	percipiō	(v)	participate
(n)	praeceptor	(a) (n)	principal
(v)	intercipiō	(n)	principle
		(n)	recipe
		(n)	deception
		(n)	capacity
		(n)	incapacity
		(a)	capacious
		(n)	precept
		(n)	preceptor
		(n)	perception
		(av)	(fm) perceptibly
		(v)	emancipate
		(n)	emancipation
		(a)	susceptible
		(n)	susceptibility

4 vid

(v)	videō	(n)	vision
(v)	prōvideō	(a)	visible
(a)	prūdēns	(n)	visibility
(n)	prūdentia	(v) (n)	visit
		(a)	visual
		(v)	provide
		(n)	providence
		(n)	provision
		(a)	providential
		(a)	evident
		(n)	evidence
		(a)	visionary
		(n)	proviso
		(a)	prudent
		(n)	prudence
		(n)	vista

In accordance with the above models, give the Latin roots and their Latin and English derivatives of the following verbs:

- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| 1. cēdō | 7. sedeō |
| 2. cadō | 8. habeō |
| 3. caedō | 9. sentiō |
| 4. moveō | 10. vertō |
| 5. pellō | 11. trahō |
| 6. vehō | 12. rogō |

VOCABULARIES

CHAPTER VIII

LATIN WORD LIST

The following list is divided into groups of words recommended for learning during each half year of the first two years of Latin study. The words in each half-year group are classified according to parts of speech.

FIRST HALF YEAR

Verbs

amō	<i>love</i>	agō	<i>drive, do, plead</i>
appellō	<i>name, call</i>	cōgō	<i>drive together, gather, compel</i>
cōfirmō	<i>strengthen, assert</i>	redigō	<i>drive back, reduce</i>
dō	<i>give</i>	cēdō	<i>move, go away, yield</i>
exspectō	<i>look out for, wait for</i>	discēdō	<i>go away</i>
labōrō	<i>toil, suffer</i>	excēdō	<i>go out, withdraw</i>
liberō	<i>set free</i>	dēfēndō	<i>ward off, defend</i>
nāvigō	<i>sail</i>	dūcō	<i>lead</i>
nūntiō	<i>give news, announce</i>	addūcō	<i>lead to, influence</i>
occupō	<i>seize</i>	indūcō	<i>lead on, influence</i>
parō	<i>make ready, prepare</i>	perdūcō	<i>lead through, construct</i>
comparō	<i>make ready, buy, compare</i>	prōdūcō	<i>lead forward, protract</i>
portō	<i>carry</i>	gerō	<i>carry on</i>
pugnō	<i>fight</i>	lūdō	<i>play</i>
servō	<i>keep, save</i>	mittō	<i>send</i>
spectō	<i>look at</i>	āmittō	<i>send away, let go, lose</i>
superō	<i>overcome, surpass, defeat</i>	committō	<i>send together, entrust, join</i>
vocō	<i>call</i>	dīmittō	<i>send away, dispatch</i>
habēō	<i>have, hold</i>	inter-	
moneō	<i>warn, advise</i>	mittō	<i>interrupt, stop</i>
moveō	<i>move</i>	permittō	<i>allow</i>
commoveō	<i>move thoroughly, alarm</i>	praemittō	<i>send ahead</i>
permoveō	<i>move strongly, excite</i>	remittō	<i>send back, let go. "e-l"</i>
removeō	<i>move back, withdraw</i>	petō	<i>seek, attack, ask</i>
respondeō	<i>answer</i>	relinquō	<i>leave behind</i>
teneō	<i>hold</i>	scribō	<i>write</i>
contineō	<i>hold together, bound</i>	cōscribō	<i>write together, enroll</i>
obtimeō	<i>hold fast, obtain</i>	vincō	<i>conquer</i>
pertimeō	<i>extend, belong to</i>	sum	<i>be</i>
sustineō	<i>uphold, resist</i>	absum	<i>be away, be absent</i>
timeō	<i>be afraid, fear</i>	adsum	<i>be near, be present</i>
videō	<i>see</i>		

Nouns

agricola	<i>farmer</i>	gladius	<i>sword</i>
amicitia	<i>friendship</i>	liber	<i>book</i>
aqua	<i>water</i>	locus	<i>place</i>
fāma	<i>reputation, rumor</i>	magister	<i>master, teacher, helms-</i>
fēmina	<i>woman</i>		<i>man</i>
filia	<i>daughter</i>	negōtium	<i>business, task</i>
fortūna	<i>chance, fortune</i>	numerus	<i>number</i>
fuga	<i>flight</i>	oculus	<i>eye</i>
iniūria	<i>wrong</i>	officium	<i>duty</i>
insula	<i>island</i>	oppidum	<i>town</i>
lingua	<i>tongue, language</i>	periculum	<i>trial, danger</i>
lūna	<i>moon</i>	populus	<i>people, nation</i>
memoria	<i>memory</i>	praemium	<i>reward</i>
mēnsa	<i>table, dish</i>	praesidium	<i>garrison, protection</i>
nātūra	<i>nature, character</i>	proelium	<i>battle</i>
nauta	<i>sailor</i>	puer	<i>boy</i>
patria	<i>one's country</i>	rēgnum	<i>kingdom, royal power</i>
pecūnia	<i>money</i>	servus	<i>slave</i>
poena	<i>penalty, punishment</i>	signum	<i>sign, signal, standard</i>
poēta	<i>poet</i>	socius	<i>ally</i>
porta	<i>gate</i>	vesper	<i>evening</i>
prōvincia	<i>province</i>	vir	<i>man</i>
puella	<i>girl</i>		
pugna	<i>fight</i>	aestās	<i>summer</i>
rēgīna	<i>queen</i>	altitūdō	<i>height</i>
silva	<i>forest</i>	arbor	<i>tree</i>
terra	<i>earth, land</i>	auctōritās	<i>authority, influence</i>
via	<i>way, road</i>	caput	<i>head</i>
victōria	<i>victory</i>	celeritās	<i>swiftness, speed</i>
vīta	<i>life</i>	cōnsul	<i>consul</i>
		corpus	<i>body</i>
ager	<i>field, country</i>	dux	<i>leader</i>
animus	<i>spirit, courage, mind</i>	flūmen	<i>river</i>
annus	<i>year</i>	frāter	<i>brother</i>
arma	<i>arms, implements</i>	hiems	<i>winter</i>
auxilium	<i>aid, assistance</i>	homō	<i>man, human being</i>
bellum	<i>war</i>	lātītūdō	<i>width</i>
castra	<i>camp</i>	lēx	<i>law</i>
cōnsilium	<i>plan, counsel</i>	libertās	<i>freedom</i>
deus	<i>god</i>	lūx	<i>light</i>
dominus	<i>master</i>	magnitūdō	<i>greatness, size</i>
equus	<i>horse</i>	māter	<i>mother</i>
factum	<i>deed</i>	miles	<i>soldier</i>
filius	<i>son</i>	multitūdō	<i>large number, crowd</i>
frūmentum	<i>grain</i>	nōmen	<i>name</i>

pater	<i>father</i>	soror	<i>sister</i>
pāx	<i>peace</i>	tempus	<i>time</i>
pēs	<i>foot</i>	victor	<i>conqueror</i>
princeps	<i>leading man, chief</i>	virtūs	<i>manliness, bravery</i>
rēx	<i>king</i>	vōx	<i>voice, word</i>
sōl	<i>sun</i>		

Adjectives, Pronouns

aequus	<i>level, equal, kindly</i>	pūblicus	<i>belonging to the people, public</i>
altus	<i>high, deep</i>	quārtus	<i>fourth</i>
amicus	<i>friendly</i>	quintus	<i>fifth</i>
amplus	<i>large, splendid</i>	reliquus	<i>left behind, remaining, rest of</i>
barbarus	<i>foreign, rude</i>	secundus	<i>following, second, favorable</i>
bonus	<i>good</i>	septimus	<i>seventh</i>
certus	<i>sure, certain</i>	sextus	<i>sixth</i>
crēber	<i>thick, close, frequent</i>	tertius	<i>third</i>
decimus	<i>tenth</i>	timidus	<i>fearful, cowardly</i>
ēgregius	<i>outstanding, distinguished</i>	tuus	<i>thy, thine, your, yours</i>
finitimus	<i>neighboring</i>	ūnus	<i>one</i>
ignōtus	<i>unknown</i>	vērus	<i>true</i>
inimicus	<i>unfriendly</i>	vester	<i>your, yours</i>
iniquus	<i>uneven, unfair</i>	centum	<i>hundred</i>
integer	<i>whole</i>	decem	<i>ten</i>
lātus	<i>wide</i>	duo	<i>two</i>
liber	<i>free</i>	novem	<i>nine</i>
longus	<i>long</i>	octō	<i>eight</i>
magnus	<i>great</i>	quattuor	<i>four</i>
malus	<i>bad</i>	quīnque	<i>five</i>
meus	<i>my, mine</i>	septem	<i>seven</i>
miser	<i>wretched</i>	sex	<i>six</i>
multus	<i>much; (pl. many)</i>	trēs	<i>three</i>
nōnus	<i>ninth</i>	vīgintī	<i>twenty</i>
noster	<i>our, ours</i>	is	<i>this, that, he</i>
nōtus	<i>known</i>	quī	<i>who, which, that</i>
novus	<i>new</i>		
octāvus	<i>eighth</i>		
parvus	<i>small</i>		
pauci	<i>a few, few</i>		
prīmus	<i>first</i>		

Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions

ā (ab)	<i>from, away from, by</i>	ē (ex)	<i>out of</i>
ad	<i>to, toward, near</i>	in	<i>in, into</i>
ante	<i>before</i>	per	<i>through</i>
cum	<i>with</i>	post	<i>after, behind</i>
dē	<i>down from, concerning</i>	prō	<i>in front of, in behalf of</i>

sine	<i>without</i>	cūr	<i>why</i>
sub	<i>under, close to</i>	et	<i>and</i>
trāns	<i>across</i>	et . . . et	<i>both . . . and</i>
anteā	<i>before that, previously</i>	etiam	<i>also, even</i>
iam	<i>now, already, presently</i>	-ne	<i>interrogative particle</i>
nōn	<i>not</i>	nec (neque)	<i>and not, nor, neither</i>
nunc	<i>now</i>	neque . . .	
postea	<i>after that, afterwards</i>	neque	<i>neither . . . nor</i>
tum (tunc)	<i>at that time</i>	quam	<i>how, as, than</i>
ubi	<i>where, when</i>	-que	<i>and</i>
ac (atque)	<i>and also, and</i>	quod	<i>because</i>
aut	<i>or</i>	sed	<i>but</i>
aut . . . aut	<i>either . . . or</i>		

SECOND HALF YEAR

Verbs

appropin-		iubeō	<i>order, command</i>
quō	<i>approach</i>	licet	<i>it is permitted</i>
clāmō	<i>shout, cry</i>	maneō	<i>stay, remain</i>
commūnicō	<i>share, communicate</i>	permaneō	<i>stay through, abide</i>
dēmōnstrō	<i>point out</i>	noceō	<i>harm</i>
(dō—1st & 3d conjugation com-		obsideō	<i>sit against, besiege</i>
pounds)		oportet	<i>it behooves, ought</i>
circumdō	<i>put around, surround</i>	perterreō	<i>frighten thoroughly</i>
	(1)	possideō	<i>possess, acquire</i>
abdō	<i>put away, hide (3)</i>	prohibeō	<i>keep away</i>
reddō	<i>give back, return (3)</i>	studeō	<i>be eager, desire</i>
trādō	<i>hand over, entrust,</i>		
	<i>surrender (3)</i>	antecēdō	<i>go before, surpass</i>
dubitō	<i>hesitate, doubt</i>	succēdō	<i>approach, come next</i>
ēnūntiō	<i>disclose, announce</i>	claudō	<i>close, shut</i>
existimō	<i>think, believe</i>	coepī	<i>have begun</i>
prōnūntiō	<i>declare</i>	cognōscō	<i>learn; (perfect: know)</i>
putō	<i>think</i>	cōnfidō	<i>trust</i>
renūntiō	<i>announce, proclaim</i>	cōnsistō	<i>take position, halt,</i>
ignōrō	<i>be unacquainted with</i>		<i>stop</i>
laudō	<i>praise</i>	dēsistō	<i>desist, cease</i>
occultō	<i>hide, conceal</i>	resistō	<i>take a stand, resist</i>
recuperō	<i>regain, get back</i>	contendō	<i>struggle, hasten</i>
temptō	<i>try, attempt</i>	ostendō	<i>hold out, show</i>
vītō	<i>avoid</i>	dicō	<i>say, speak</i>
vulnerō	<i>wound</i>	exstruō	<i>pile up, build</i>
		instruō	<i>arrange, marshal</i>
audeō	<i>dare</i>	legō	<i>pick, choose, read</i>
dēbeō	<i>owe, ought</i>	dēligō	<i>pick out, choose</i>
doceō	<i>teach, inform</i>	pellō	<i>strike, beat, drive</i>

compellō	drive together, collect, force	iaciō	hurl, throw
impellō	drive on, urge on	adiciō	add to
pōnō	put, place	coniciō	hurl, throw
dēpōnō	put down, put aside	obiciō	throw against
expōnō	put forth, set forth	prōciō	hurl (forward)
impōnō	put on	audiō	hear
prōpōnō	set forth, propose	finiō	limit, bound, end
premō	press	mūniō	do a task, build, fortify
submittō	send under, send to assist, yield	sciō	know
trahō	drag, draw	sentio	feel, think, judge
capiō	take, seize	cōsentiō	think together, agree
accipiō	take to, receive, accept	veniō	come
excipiō	take out, succeed to	circum-veniō	come around, surround, cut off
incipiō	begin	conveniō	come together, assemble
cupiō	desire, wish	inveniō	come upon, find
faciō	do, make	pervenio	come through, arrive
cōnficiō	accomplish, complete	dēsūm	be lacking
dēficiō	fail, revolt from	possum	be able, can
interficiō	kill	praesum	be ahead, be in charge of
perficiō	accomplish	supersum	be over, remain, survive
praefficiō	put at the head of		
prōficiō	accomplish, gain		
satisfaciō	do enough, do one's duty, apologize		

Nouns

cōpia	supply, abundance (pl. forces)	triduum	three days
hōra	hour	aetās	age, time of life
inopia	want, lack	cīvitās	citizenship, community, state
ripa	bank, shore	condiciō	agreement, terms, condition
sagitta	arrow	cōnsuētūdō	custom, habit
toga	toga	cupiditās	desire, longing
tuba	trumpet	difficultās	difficulty
villa	farm house	dignitās	worth, rank
beneficium	kind deed, service	facultās	power of doing, ability, chance
bīdium	two days	genus	origin, kind, race
campus	plain, field	iūs	right, law
digitus	finger, toe	laus	praise, glory
imperātum	command	ōrātiō	speech
imperium	command, power	ōrdō	order, rank
maleficium	evil deed	potestās	power
modus	measure, manner		
spatium	space		

<i>ratio</i>	<i>reckoning, plan, rea- son</i>	<i>vīs</i>	<i>violence, force</i>
<i>timor</i>	<i>fear</i>	<i>adventus</i>	<i>approach, arrival</i>
<i>vulnus</i>	<i>wound</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>horn, wing (of an army)</i>
<i>iter</i>	<i>road, march</i>	<i>domus</i>	<i>home, house</i>
<i>civis</i>	<i>citizen</i>	<i>equitātus</i>	<i>body of horsemen, cavalry</i>
<i>dēns</i>	<i>tooth</i>	<i>exercitus</i>	<i>trained body, army</i>
<i>finis</i>	<i>end, boundary; (pl. territory)</i>	<i>exitus</i>	<i>outcome, end</i>
<i>hostis</i>	<i>enemy</i>	<i>manus</i>	<i>hand, band, troop</i>
<i>mare</i>	<i>sea</i>	<i>passus</i>	<i>pace, (double) step</i>
<i>mēns</i>	<i>mind</i>	<i>senātus</i>	<i>body of elders, senate</i>
<i>mēnsis</i>	<i>month</i>	<i>aciēs</i>	<i>edge, line of battle</i>
<i>mōns</i>	<i>mountain</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>day</i>
<i>mors</i>	<i>death</i>	<i>fidēs</i>	<i>trust, pledge, reli- ability</i>
<i>nāvis</i>	<i>ship</i>	<i>merīdiēs</i>	<i>midday</i>
<i>nox</i>	<i>night</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>thing</i>
<i>pars</i>	<i>part</i>	<i>rēs publica</i>	<i>commonwealth</i>
<i>pōns</i>	<i>bridge</i>	<i>spēs</i>	<i>hope</i>
<i>urbs</i>	<i>city</i>		

Adjectives, Pronouns

<i>cupidus</i>	<i>desirous</i>	<i>levis</i>	<i>light, fickle</i>
<i>dexter</i>	<i>right (of direction)</i>	<i>mille</i>	<i>thousand</i>
<i>idōneus</i>	<i>suitable</i>	<i>nōbilis</i>	<i>well-known</i>
<i>maritimus</i>	<i>of the sea, maritime</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>all, whole (sing. every)</i>
<i>necessarius</i>	<i>necessary</i>	<i>pār</i>	<i>equal</i>
<i>occultus</i>	<i>hidden, secret</i>	<i>potēns</i>	<i>able, powerful</i>
<i>perītus</i>	<i>experienced, skilled</i>	<i>praesēns</i>	<i>present, in person</i>
<i>propinquus</i>	<i>nearby, kinsman</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>foreseeing, discreet, wise</i>
<i>sinister</i>	<i>left (of direction)</i>	<i>recēns</i>	<i>fresh, new</i>
<i>suus</i>	<i>his, her, its, their (own)</i>	<i>similis</i>	<i>like, resembling</i>
<i>vicīnus</i>	<i>neighboring</i>	<i>singulāris</i>	<i>one by one, extraordi- nary</i>
<i>ācer</i>	<i>sharp, keen, eager</i>	<i>ego</i>	<i>I</i>
<i>alacer</i>	<i>eager, cheerful</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>this</i>
<i>celer</i>	<i>swift</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>the same</i>
<i>communis</i>	<i>common, general</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>that</i>
<i>difficilis</i>	<i>difficult</i>	<i>ipse</i>	<i>self, very</i>
<i>diligēns</i>	<i>careful</i>	<i>quis</i>	<i>who, any</i>
<i>facilis</i>	<i>easy</i>	<i>sui</i>	<i>(of) himself, herself itself, themselves</i>
<i>fidēlis</i>	<i>faithful</i>		
<i>fortis</i>	<i>brave</i>	<i>tū</i>	<i>thou, you</i>
<i>gravis</i>	<i>heavy, serious</i>		
<i>humilis</i>	<i>low, lowly</i>		

Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions

apud	<i>near, in the presence of, among</i>	interim	<i>meanwhile</i>
inter	<i>between, among</i>	magis	<i>more greatly, more</i>
ob	<i>against, on account of</i>	magnopere	<i>greatly</i>
propter	<i>near, on account of</i>	nē . . .	
aegrē	<i>with difficulty</i>	quidem	<i>not even</i>
amplius	<i>more</i>	parum	<i>(too) little</i>
bene	<i>well</i>	quidem	<i>certainly, at least</i>
bis	<i>twice</i>	quō	<i>whither</i>
eō	<i>thither, to that place</i>	satis	<i>enough</i>
eōdem	<i>to the same place</i>	unde	<i>whence</i>
facile	<i>easily</i>	vehementer	<i>strongly</i>
hic (adv.)	<i>here, at this point</i>	vērō	<i>in truth, but</i>
hūc	<i>hither</i>	autem	<i>moreover, but</i>
iam pridem	<i>long ago</i>	enim	<i>for, indeed</i>
ibi	<i>there</i>	nam	<i>for</i>
inde	<i>thence</i>	sī	<i>if</i>

THIRD HALF YEAR

Verbs

armō	<i>arm, equip</i>	accēdō	<i>go to, approach, be added</i>
commemorō	<i>mention</i>	concēdō	<i>go with, withdraw, yield</i>
cūrō	<i>care for, provide</i>	colligō	<i>gather, collect</i>
dīmīcō	<i>fight</i>	intellegō	<i>understand</i>
explōrō	<i>reconnoiter</i>	cōnsuēscō	<i>become accustomed</i>
expugnō	<i>take by storm</i>	cōnsulō	<i>plan, consult, deliberate</i>
oppugnō	<i>attack, assault</i>		
imperō	<i>command, impose</i>	currō	<i>run</i>
impetrō	<i>obtain (a request)</i>	occurrō	<i>run against, meet</i>
incitō	<i>urge on, arouse</i>	dispergō	<i>scatter</i>
mandō	<i>hand over, commission</i>	dividō	<i>separate, divide</i>
orō	<i>pray, plead</i>	emō	<i>buy, take</i>
postulō	<i>demand</i>	incendō	<i>set on fire</i>
recūsō	<i>object, refuse</i>	occidō	<i>fall, set</i>
rogō	<i>ask, ask for</i>	quaerō	<i>seek, ask</i>
interrogō	<i>ask (a question)</i>	conquirō	<i>seek together, collect</i>
spērō	<i>hope</i>	solvō	<i>untie, release, perform, pay</i>
supportō	<i>carry up</i>		
tardō	<i>make slow, check</i>	tangō	<i>touch</i>
adhibeō	<i>have on hand, supply</i>	attingō	<i>touch upon, attain</i>
augeō	<i>make grow, increase</i>	tollō	<i>lift, remove</i>
pateō	<i>lie open, extend</i>	tribuō	<i>assign, grant</i>
persuādeō	<i>persuade, convince</i>	distribuō	<i>distribute</i>
valeō	<i>be strong</i>		

afficiō	<i>do to, affect</i>	tueor	<i>gaze at, protect</i>
cōspiciō	<i>behold</i>	vereor	<i>fear, respect</i>
dēspiciō	<i>look down upon, de- spise</i>	loquor	<i>talk</i>
perspiciō	<i>look through, under- stand</i>	colloquor	<i>talk together, confer</i>
ēripiō	<i>snatch out, free</i>	nāscor	<i>be born</i>
fugiō	<i>flee</i>	proficiscor	<i>set forth, start</i>
effugiō	<i>escape</i>	queror	<i>complain</i>
perfugiō	<i>flee to, desert</i>	sequor	<i>follow</i>
recipiō	<i>take back, receive</i>	cōnsequor	<i>follow up, overtake, attain</i>
suscipiō	<i>take up, undertake</i>	īnsequor	<i>follow on, pursue</i>
comperiō	<i>find out, ascertain</i>	persequor	<i>follow through, pursue</i>
		prōsequor	<i>follow on, pursue, escort</i>
reperiō	<i>gain back, discover, find</i>	subsequor	<i>follow closely</i>
		ūtor	<i>use, employ</i>
expediō	<i>extricate, free</i>	adgredior	<i>step up, approach, at- tack</i>
arbitror	<i>consider, think</i>	congredior	<i>step together, meet</i>
cōnor	<i>try, attempt</i>	prōgredior	<i>step forward, proceed</i>
cōspicor	<i>behold</i>	patior	<i>suffer, allow</i>
suspīcor	<i>suspect</i>		
hortor	<i>urge, advise</i>	orior	<i>rise</i>
moror	<i>delay, tarry</i>	adorior	<i>rise against, attack</i>
commoror	<i>remain</i>	experior	<i>try out, test</i>
vagor	<i>roam</i>	potior	<i>get power over, gain possession of</i>
versor	<i>turn about, dwell</i>		
polliceor	<i>promise</i>		

Nouns

causa	<i>reason</i>	iugum	<i>yoke, ridge</i>
familia	<i>household</i>	lēgātus	<i>envoy, deputy</i>
fossa	<i>ditch</i>	liberī	<i>(freeborn) children</i>
grātia	<i>favor, influence, grati- tude</i>	nihil	<i>nothing</i>
opera	<i>work, effort</i>	pāgus	<i>district, clan</i>
sententia	<i>feeling, opinion</i>	subsidiū	<i>reserve, reēnforce- ment, assistance</i>
summa	<i>highest sum, total</i>	supplicium	<i>punishment</i>
aedificium	<i>building</i>	tēlum	<i>missile, weapon</i>
carrus	<i>wagon, cart</i>	tergum	<i>back, rear</i>
castellum	<i>fort, redoubt</i>	vadum	<i>shoal, ford</i>
impedimen- tum	<i>hindrance; (pl. bag- gage)</i>	vāllum	<i>rampart</i>
initium	<i>beginning</i>	verbum	<i>word</i>
institūtum	<i>custom</i>	vīcus	<i>village</i>
		vulgus	<i>common crowd</i>

agmen	marching column	terror	fright, panic
calamitās	disaster		
centuriō	centurion	adulēscēns	youth, young man
clāmor	outcry, shout	caedēs	slaughter
grātulātiō	congratulation	cliēns	dependent, retainer, vassal
honor	honor, glory, office	cohors	cohort, troop
hūmānitās	kindliness, culture	collis	hill
labor	toil	gēns	family, clan, tribe
légātiō	mission, embassy	aditus	approach
legiō	legion	cāsus	fall, chance, accident
maiōrēs	ancestors	commeātus	supplies
mōs	manner, habit	cōspectus	view, sight
mūnitio	fortification	cursus	running, course
nātiō	race, people	impetus	attack, charge, rush
nēmō	nobody	magistrātus	office, official
nōbilitās	rank, nobility	metus	fear
obses	hostage	occāsus	falling, setting
opiniō	belief, view	portus	harbor
ops	aid, resources	ūsus	use, advantage, experience
opus	work		
plēbs	common people	plānitīēs	plain
quaestor	quaestor	rēs frūmen-	
regiō	boundary line, district	tāria	grain supply
salūs	health, safety		
suspiciō	suspicion		

Adjectives, Pronouns

aeger	sick	tantus	so great
aliēnus	belonging to another, strange, unfavorable	tūtus	protected, safe
angustus	narrow	ūniversus	all together
apertus	open	vetustus	old, ancient
cēteri	the others, the rest	audāx	bold, daring
commodus	suitable, convenient	brevis	short, brief
dīversus	turned away, different	complūrēs	several, very many
firmus	strong	familiāris	belonging to the house- hold, intimate
frūmentār-		militāris	of a soldier
ius	belonging to grain	necesse	necessary
iūstus	just, fair	prior	preceding, former
medius	middle	turpis	base, disgraceful
nocturnus	nightly	ūtilis	useful
perpetuus	unbroken, lasting	vetus	old, longstanding
posterus	next, later		
prīvātus	apart, private	alius	another
quantus	how great, as great	alter	the other (of two), second
singuli	one at a time		
superus	upper	neuter	neither

nōnnūllus	some	ūllus	any
nūllus	none, no	uter	which, of two
sōlus	alone, only	uterque	each of two, both
tōtus	whole		

Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions

circum	around	plērumque	for the greater part.
extrā	outside of, beyond		generally
inf̄rā	below	potius	rather, preferably
intrā	inside, within	propterea	on account of this,
prope	near, nearby		therefore
suprā	above, beyond	quā	by what way, where
ultrā	beyond	saepe	often
aliter	otherwise	semper	always
audācter	boldly	sic	thus, so
causā	by reason of, for the	sōlum	only
	sake of	tam	thus, so
circiter	about	cum	when, since, although
diū	a long time	cum . . .	
ita	thus, so	tum	both . . . and, not
itaque	and thus, therefore		only . . . but also
item	likewise	dum	while, as long as, pro-
modo	only, just now		vided, until
noctū	at night	etsi	and if, although
nōn modo		nē	lest, that not
. . . sed		nisi	if not, unless, except
etiam	not only . . . but	quoniam	in as much as, since
	also	tamen	however, nevertheless
numquam	never	ut	in order that, so that

FOURTH HALF YEAR

Verbs

administrō	govern, manage	instō	stand on, press on, be
collocō	place together, estab-		at hand
	lish	praestō	stand before, excel,
commendō	entrust		guarantee
dēcertō	fight a decisive battle	sublevō	assist
dēspērō	give up hope	vāstō	lay waste
hiemō	spend the winter		
iūrō	make oath, swear	compleō	fill up
coniūrō	conspire, plot	mereō	earn, deserve
nūdō	make bare, empty	mereor	
pācō	make peace, subdue	praebeō	hold in front, afford,
perturbō	throw into confusion		furnish
significō	announce	adigō	drive to, haul, move
sollicitō	stir up, tempt	admittō	let go, admit
stō	stand	arcessō	summon, invite
cōnstō	stand with, agree	cadō	fall

accidō	<i>befall, happen</i>	advertō	<i>turn to, proceed</i>
incidō	<i>befall, happen</i>		<i>against</i>
caedō	<i>fell, cut, kill</i>	animad-	
concidō	<i>kill</i>	vertō	<i>turn the mind to, ob-</i>
cernō	<i>distinguish</i>		<i>serve</i>
dēcernō	<i>decide, decree</i>	convertō	<i>turn around, change</i>
circumsistō	<i>hem in, surround</i>	revertō	<i>turn back, return</i>
compre-	<i>seize, grasp, under-</i>	efficiō	<i>work out, accomplish,</i>
hendō	<i>stand</i>		<i>bring about</i>
cōnfligō	<i>strike together, fight</i>	reficiō	<i>make over, repair</i>
cōnsidō	<i>settle, take position</i>	praecipio	<i>advise, give directions</i>
dēdō	<i>give over, devote, sur-</i>	aperiō	<i>open</i>
	<i>render</i>	impediō	<i>hinder</i>
ēdō	<i>put out, put forth</i>	eō	<i>go</i>
dēdūcō	<i>lead away, launch</i>	adeō	<i>go to, visit</i>
subdūcō	<i>lead under, lead up to,</i>	ineō	<i>go into, undertake</i>
	<i>draw up, beach</i>	intereō	<i>perish</i>
dēserō	<i>give up, abandon</i>	pereō	<i>go through, perish</i>
incolō	<i>dwell in</i>	redeō	<i>go back, return</i>
intercēdō	<i>go between, forbid,</i>	trānseō	<i>go across, cross</i>
	<i>veto</i>	ferō	<i>bear, bring, carry</i>
prōcēdō	<i>go forward, advance</i>	afferō	<i>bring to</i>
interclūdō	<i>shut off, cut off</i>	cōnferō	<i>bring together, collect,</i>
iungō	<i>join</i>		<i>transport</i>
coniungō	<i>join together, unite</i>	dēferō	<i>carry away, report</i>
minuō	<i>lessen</i>	differō	<i>be different, differ,</i>
nōscō	<i>learn, recognize</i>		<i>postpone</i>
opprimō	<i>crush, overwhelm</i>	inferō	<i>bring in, bring against</i>
pendō	<i>hang, suspend, pay</i>	offerō	<i>bring against, offer</i>
poscō	<i>demand, claim</i>	perferō	<i>bear through, endure,</i>
regō	<i>direct, rule</i>		<i>announce</i>
dirigō	<i>direct, guide</i>	referō	<i>bring back, report</i>
statuō	<i>set up, fix, determine</i>	fīo	<i>be made, happen, be-</i>
cōstituō	<i>put together, establish</i>		<i>come</i>
	<i>decide</i>	mālō	<i>prefer</i>
īstituō	<i>set up, establish,</i>	nōlō	<i>be unwilling</i>
	<i>undertake</i>	volō	<i>be willing, wish</i>
restituō	<i>place back, restore</i>	admīror	<i>wonder at</i>
sūmō	<i>take</i>	pābulor	<i>forage</i>
cōnsūmō	<i>use up</i>	populor	<i>lay waste, ravage</i>
tegō	<i>cover, conceal</i>	nānciscor	<i>obtain</i>
vertō	<i>turn</i>	mētior	<i>measure out, distrib-</i>
			<i>ute</i>

Nouns

ancora	<i>anchor</i>	contrō-	
angustiae	<i>narrowness, defile,</i>	versia	<i>dispute, quarrel</i>
	<i>pass</i>	contumēlia	<i>insult</i>
aquila	<i>eagle</i>	disciplina	<i>training, discipline</i>

fidūcia	<i>confidence</i>	eques	<i>horseman, knight; pl.</i>
īnsīdiae	<i>ambush, treachery</i>		<i>cavalry</i>
littera	<i>letter (of the alpha- bet); pl. a letter, letters</i>	ēruptiō	<i>breaking out, sally</i>
		exercitātiō	<i>training</i>
māteria	<i>timber</i>	explōrātor	<i>scout</i>
mora	<i>delay</i>	factiō	<i>party, faction</i>
perfidia	<i>treachery</i>	funditor	<i>slinger</i>
praeda	<i>prey, booty</i>	iūs iūran-	
vigilia	<i>night watch, guard</i>	dum	<i>oath</i>
cibus	<i>food</i>	lapis	<i>stone</i>
colloquium	<i>conference</i>	latus	<i>side</i>
concilium	<i>calling together, meet- ing</i>	litus	<i>coast, shore, beach</i>
		mercātor	<i>trader</i>
dētrimen-		mulier	<i>woman</i>
tum	<i>loss</i>	mūnus	<i>task, duty, service, offering</i>
hiberna	<i>winter quarters</i>	obsidiō	<i>siege</i>
intervallum	<i>space between walls, interval</i>	occāsiō	<i>opportunity</i>
		onus	<i>burden</i>
mandātum	<i>commission</i>	oppugnātiō	<i>assault</i>
mūrus	<i>(town) wall</i>	palūs	<i>swamp, marsh</i>
nūntius	<i>news, message, mes- senger</i>	pecus(-oris)	<i>cattle</i>
		pedes	<i>foot soldier</i>
pābulum	<i>fodder</i>	prex	<i>prayer</i>
pilum	<i>spear</i>	profectiō	<i>departure</i>
praefectus	<i>captain, commander</i>	pulvis	<i>dust</i>
respōsum	<i>answer</i>	servitūs	<i>slavery</i>
sagittārius	<i>archer</i>	sponte suā	<i>of one's own will, voluntarily</i>
saxum	<i>rock</i>		
scūtum	<i>shield</i>	statiō	<i>outpost, picket</i>
stipendium	<i>payment, tax, cam- paign</i>	tempestās	<i>period of time, weather, storm</i>
		voluntās	<i>willingness, good will</i>
studium	<i>eagerness</i>	classis	<i>fleet</i>
tormentum	<i>military engine</i>	famēs	<i>hunger, starvation</i>
tribūnus	<i>tribune</i>	frōns (-tis)	<i>forehead, front</i>
tumulus	<i>small hill, mound</i>	ignis	<i>fire</i>
ventus	<i>wind</i>	turris	<i>tower</i>
vinculum	<i>bond, fetter</i>	vallēs	<i>valley</i>
		aestus	<i>heat, tide</i>
aes	<i>copper, bronze, money</i>	ēventus	<i>outcome, result</i>
agger	<i>mount, rampart, causeway</i>	principātus	<i>leadership</i>
dēditīō	<i>surrender</i>	rēs militāris	<i>warfare</i>
dēfēnsor	<i>defender</i>	speciēs	<i>appearance</i>

Adjectives, Pronouns

captivus	<i>captive, prisoner</i>	continuus	<i>unbroken</i>
cōnfertus	<i>crowded together, dense</i>	cotidiānus	<i>daily</i>
		dēfessus	<i>tired out</i>

exiguus	<i>limited, little</i>	citerior	<i>this side of, hither</i>
ferus	<i>wild, fierce</i>	dēclivis	<i>sloping down</i>
invītus	<i>against one's will</i>	equester	<i>of a horseman, equestrian</i>
onerārius	<i>suitable for burden, of a transport (ship)</i>	incolumis	<i>unharmed</i>
oppidānus	<i>of the town, townsman</i>	inermis	<i>unarmed</i>
opportūnus	<i>at the right time, suitable</i>	interior	<i>inner</i>
plērique	<i>the greater part, majority</i>	pedester	<i>of a footsoldier, on foot</i>
prīstinus	<i>former, of old</i>	tot	<i>so many</i>
quiētus	<i>at rest, peaceful</i>	totidem	<i>just as many</i>
repentinus	<i>sudden</i>	aliquis	<i>some, any</i>
tardus	<i>slow</i>	quicumque	<i>whoever</i>
vacuus	<i>empty</i>	quidam	<i>a certain one, some one</i>
		quisquam	<i>any one at all</i>
		quisque	<i>each one</i>

Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions

contrā	<i>against, opposite</i>	quoque	<i>also, too</i>
praeter	<i>along past, beside</i>	repente	<i>suddenly</i>
admodum	<i>very, very much</i>	rūrsus	<i>(turned back) again</i>
adversus	<i>(turned toward), facing, opposite</i>	sicut	<i>just as</i>
clam	<i>secretly</i>	(sicuti)	<i>just as</i>
cōnfestim	<i>promptly</i>	simul	<i>together, at the same time</i>
cotidiē	<i>every day, daily</i>	statim	<i>at once, immediately</i>
deinde	<i>thereupon, next</i>	subitō	<i>suddenly</i>
ferē	<i>almost, about, generally</i>	ultrō	<i>beyond, unasked, voluntarily</i>
frustrā	<i>in vain</i>	ūnā	<i>together</i>
grātis	<i>for nothing</i>	undique	<i>from (on) all sides</i>
intereā	<i>meanwhile</i>	ūsque	<i>up to</i>
nōndum	<i>not yet</i>	vix	<i>barely, scarcely</i>
omninō	<i>altogether, at all</i>	an	<i>or (in a question)</i>
paene	<i>almost</i>	at	<i>but</i>
partim	<i>partly</i>	nēve (neu)	<i>and that not</i>
paulātīm	<i>little by little</i>	postquam	<i>(later than), after</i>
paulisper	<i>for a little while</i>	(postea- quam)	
paulō	<i>(by) a little</i>	priusquam	<i>(sooner than), before, until</i>
paulum	<i>(for) a little</i>	quīn	<i>indeed, (but) that</i>
postridiē	<i>the day after, next day</i>		<i>(with negative expressions of doubt)</i>
praesertim	<i>particularly</i>	quod sī	<i>but if, and if</i>
praeterea	<i>besides this, moreover</i>	quominus	<i>(that less), lest</i>
prīdiē	<i>on the day before</i>	sī quis	<i>if any, whoever</i>
prīmō	<i>at first</i>	vel	<i>or</i>
primum	<i>first</i>		
procul	<i>afar</i>		

CHAPTER IX

LATIN WORD LIST (With Translations)

Words marked with an asterisk (*) are listed in the latest New York State Syllabus as the words required to be taught in second-year Latin classes.

Words marked with a dagger (†) are listed in this syllabus as a minimum list for mastery by second-year students.

†ā, ab, prep. w. abl.	from, away from, by	*aditus, -ūs, m.	approach
abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus	put away, hide	administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	govern, manage
*abeō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus	go away, depart	admiror, -ārī, -ātus	wonder at
*absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus	be away, be absent	admittō, -ere, -misi, -missus	let go, admit
*ac, conj.	and also, and	admodum, adv.	very, very much
*accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus	go to, approach, be added	adorior, -irī, -ortus	rise against, attack
*accidō, -ere, -cidī	be fall, happen	*adsum, -esse, -fuī	be near, be present
†accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus	take to, receive, accept	*adulēscēns, -entis, m.	youth, young man
†ācer, ācris, ācre, adj.	sharp, keen, eager	*adulēscētia, -ae, f.	youth
†aciēs, -ēī, f.	edge, line of battle	†adventus, -ūs, m.	approach, arrival
ācritēr, ācrius, ācerrimē, adv.	sharply, fiercely	adversus, prep. w. acc.	turned toward, facing, opposite
†ad, prep. w. acc.	to, toward, near	advertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus	turn to, proceed against
addō, -ere, -didī, -ditus	add	*aedificium, -ī, n.	building
*addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus	lead to, influence	*aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	build, construct
*adeō, -ire, -iī, -itus	go to, visit	*aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj.	sick
adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	do to, affect	aegrē, adv.	with difficulty
adhibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus	have on hand, supply	*aequus, -a, -um, adj.	level, even, kindly
adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus	add to	aes, aeris, n.	copper, bronze, money
adigō, -ere, -ēgī, -actus	drive to, haul, move	†aestās, -tātis, f.	summer
		*aetās, -tātis, f.	age, time of life
		aestus, -ūs, m.	heat, tide
		afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātus	bring to
		†ager, agrī, m.	field, country

agger, aggeris, m.	mound, rampart, causeway	*animadvertō, -ere, -verti, -versus	turn the mind to, observe
*aggredior, -ī, -gressus	step up, approach, attack	†animus, -ī, m.	spirit, courage, mind
*agmen, -minis, n.	marching column	†annus, -ī, m.	year
†agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus	drive, do, plead	†ante, adv. and prep. w. acc.	before
†agricola, -ae, m.	farmer	*antequam, conj.	sooner than, before
alacer, -cris, -cre, adj.	eager, cheerful	anteā, adv.	before that, previously
aliēnus, -a, -um, adj.	belonging to another, strange, unfavorable	antecēdō, -ere, -cessi	go before, surpass
*aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, indef. pron.	some, any	aperiō, -īre, aperui, apertus	open
aliter, adv.	otherwise	*apertus, -a, -um, adj.	open
*alius, alia, aliud, adj.	another	†appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	name, call
*alter, altera, alterum, adj.	the other (of two), second	*appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum	approach
*altitūdō, inis, f.	height	*apud, prep. w. acc.	near, in the presence of, among
†altus, -a, -um, adj.	high, deep	†aqua, ae, f.	water
*ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	walk about, take a walk	*aquila, -ae, f.	eagle
†amīcitiā, -ae, f.	friendship	†arbitror, -ārī, -ātus	consider, think
†amīcus, -a, -um, adj.	friendly	*arbor, -oris, f.	tree
†amīcus, -ī, m.	friend	arcessō, -ere, īvi, -ītus	summon, invite
*āmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus	send away, let go, lose	†arma, -ōrum, n.	arms, implements
†amo, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	love	*armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	arm
*amor, -ōris, m.	affection, love	*at, conj.	but
amplius, adv.	more	*atque, conj.	and also, and
*amplus, -a, -um, adj.	large, splendid or (in question)	*ātrium, -ī, n.	court, hall, room
an, conj.	anchor	attingō, -ere, attigi, attactus	touch upon, attain
ancora, -ae, f.	anchor	auctōritās, -tātis, f.	authority, influence
angustiae, -ārum, f.	narrowness, defile, pass	*audācia, -ae, f.	boldness, daring, recklessness
angustus, -a, -um, adj.	narrow	*audācter, adv.	boldly
		*audāx, -ācis, adj.	bold, daring
		*audeō, -ēre, ausus	dare

†audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus	hear	†celeritās, -tātis, f.	swiftness, speed
*augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus	make grow, increase	*centum, num. adj.	hundred
*aut, conj.	or	*centuriō, -ōnis, m.	centurion
*aut . . aut	either . . or	cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētus	distinguish
*autem, postpositive conj.	moreover, but	†certus, -a, -um, adj.	sure, certain
†auxilium, -ī, n.	aid, assistance	*cēterī, -ae, -a, adj.	the others, the rest
*barbarus, -a, -um, adj.	foreign, rude	*cibus, -ī, m.	food
†bellum, -ī, n.	war	*circiter, adv. and prep. w. acc.	about
*bene, adv.	well	†circum, adv. and prep. w. acc.	around
*beneficium, -ī, n.	kind deed, service	*circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus	put around, surround
bīdum, -ī, n.	two days	circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī	hem in, surround
*bis, adv.	twice	*circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus	come around, surround cut off
†bonus, -a, -um, adj.	good	*citerior, -ius, adj.	this side of, hither
†brevis, -e, adj.	short, brief	†cīvis, -is, m. and f.	citizen
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus	fall	†cīvītās, -tātis, f.	citizenship, community state
*caedēs, -is, f.	slaughter	clam, adv.	secretly
caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesus	fell, cut, kill	*clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	shout, cry
*caelum, -ī, n.	heaven, the sky	*clāmor, -ōris, m.	outcry, shout
*calamitās, -tātis, f.	disaster	†clārus, -a, -um, adj.	bright illustri- ous
*campus, -ī, m.	plain, field	*classis, -is, f.	fleet
†capīō, -ere, cēpī, captus	take, seize	*claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus	close, shut
*captivus, ī, m.	captive, prisoner	cliēns, -entis, m.	dependent, retainer, vassal
†caput, -itis, n.	head	*coepī, -isse, coeptus	have begun
carrus, -ī, m.	wagon, cart	†cognōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus	learn (in the perf., know)
*casa, -ae, f.	hut, cottage	*cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus	drive together, gather, compel
castellum, -ī, n.	fort, redoubt	†cohors, -hortis, f.	cohort, troop
†castra, -ōrum, n. pl.	camp		
*cāsus, -ūs, m.	fall, chance, accident		
†causa, -ae, f.	reason		
*causā, with gen.	by reason of, for the sake of		
*cēdo, -ere, cessī, cessūrus	move, go away, yield		
†celer, -eris, -ere, adj.	swift		

*cohortor, -ārī, -ātus	<i>encourage, exhort</i>	*concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus	<i>go with, withdraw, yield</i>
colligō, -ere, -lēgi, -lēctus	<i>gather, collect</i>	concidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus	<i>kill</i>
*collis, -is, m.	<i>hill</i>	*concilium, -ī, n.	<i>calling together, meeting</i>
*collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>place together, establish</i>	*condiciō, -ōnis, f.	<i>agreement, terms, condition</i>
*colloquium, -ī, n.	<i>conference</i>	*cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātus	<i>bring together, collect, transport</i>
colloquor, -ī, -locūtus	<i>talk together, confer</i>	cōnfertus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>crowded together, dense</i>
commeātus, -ūs, m.	<i>supplies</i>	cōnfestim, adv.	<i>promptly</i>
commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>mention</i>	†cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	<i>accomplish, complete</i>
commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>entrust</i>	cōnfidō, -ere, -fīsus	<i>trust</i>
*committō, -ere, -misī, -missus	<i>send together, entrust, join</i>	*cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>strengthen, assert</i>
commodus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>suitable, convenient</i>	cōnfligō, -ere, -flixī, -flictus	<i>strike together, fight</i>
commoror, -ārī, -ātus	<i>remain</i>	congregior, -ī, -gressus	<i>step together, meet</i>
*commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus	<i>move thoroughly, alarm</i>	*coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus	<i>hurl, throw</i>
communicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>share, communicate</i>	*coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus	<i>join together, unite</i>
*communis, -e, adj.	<i>common, general</i>	coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>conspire, plot</i>
*comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>make ready, buy, compare</i>	*cōnor, -ārī, -ātus	<i>try, attempt</i>
compellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus	<i>drive together, collect, force</i>	conquirō, -ere, -quisivī, -quisitus	<i>search together, collect</i>
comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertus	<i>find out, ascertain</i>	cōnscrībō, -ere, -scripsī, -scrīptus	<i>write together, enroll</i>
*compleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus	<i>fill up</i>	cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus	<i>think together, agree</i>
*complūrēs, -a, adj.	<i>several, very many</i>		
*comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>bring in, carry, convoy</i>		
comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus	<i>seize, grasp, understand</i>		

*cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus	<i>follow up, attain, overtake</i>	convertō, -ere, -verti, -versus	<i>turn around, change</i>
*cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>keep, maintain, save, spare</i>	†convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>call together, summon</i>
*cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessūrus	<i>settle, take position</i>	†cōpia, -ae, f.	<i>supply, abundance, pl., forces</i>
†cōnsilium, -ī, n.	<i>plan, counsel</i>	*cornū, -ūs, n.	<i>horn, wing (of an army)</i>
*cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī	<i>take position, halt, stop</i>	†corpus, -oris, n. cotidiānus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>body daily</i>
*cōnspectus, -ūs, m.	<i>view, sight</i>	cotidiē, adv.	<i>every day, daily</i>
*cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus	<i>behold</i>	crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, adj.	<i>thick, close, frequent</i>
cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus	<i>behold</i>	*crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus	<i>give trust, be- lieve, trust</i>
†cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus	<i>put together, establish, decide</i>	†cum, prep. w. abl.	<i>with</i>
cōnstō, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrus	<i>stand with, agree</i>	†cum, conj.	<i>when, since, although</i>
cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus	<i>become accustomed</i>	cum . . tum, correl. conj.	<i>both . . and, not only . . but also</i>
cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f.	<i>custom, habit</i>	cupiditās, -tātis, f.	<i>desire, longing</i>
*cōnsul, -ulis, m.	<i>consul</i>	*cupidus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>desirous</i>
cōnsulātus, -ūs, m.	<i>consulship</i>	†cupiō, -ere, cupivī, cupītus	<i>desire, wish</i>
cōnsulō, -ere, -sulvī, -sultus	<i>plan, consult, deliberate</i>	†cūr, adv.	<i>why</i>
*cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus	<i>use up</i>	*cūra, -ae, f.	<i>care, anxiety, trouble</i>
†contendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentus	<i>struggle, hasten</i>	*cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>care for, provide</i>
*contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus	<i>hold together, bound</i>	*currō, -ere, cucurri, cursum	<i>run</i>
*continuus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>unbroken</i>	*currus, -ūs, m.	<i>chariot, car</i>
†contrā, adv. and prep. w. acc.	<i>against, opposite</i>	*cursus, -ūs, m.	<i>running, course</i>
contrōversia, -ae, f.	<i>dispute, quarrel</i>	†dē, prep. w. abl.	<i>down from, concerning</i>
contumēlia, -ae, f.	<i>insult</i>	†dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus	<i>owe, ought ten</i>
†conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum	<i>come together, assemble</i>	*decem, num. adj.	
		dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus	<i>decide, decree</i>
		dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>decide, fight a decisive battle</i>

*decimus, -a, -um, num. adj.	<i>tenth</i>	differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātus	<i>be different, differ, postpone</i>
dēclivis, -e, adj.	<i>sloping down</i>	*difficilis, -e, adj.	<i>difficult</i>
*dēditio, -ōnis, f.	<i>surrender</i>	*difficultās, -tātis, f.	<i>difficulty</i>
*dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus	<i>give up, devote, surrender</i>	*digitus, -ī, m.	<i>finger, toe</i>
*dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus	<i>lead away, launch</i>	dignitās, -tātis, f.	<i>worth, rank</i>
†dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus	<i>ward off, defend</i>	*diligēns, -entis, adj.	<i>careful</i>
*dēfēnsor, -ōris, m.	<i>defender</i>	*diligentia, -ae, f.	<i>carefulness</i>
dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus	<i>carry away, report</i>	dīmiciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum	<i>fight</i>
dēfessus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>tired out</i>	*dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus	<i>send away, dispatch</i>
dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	<i>fail, revolt from</i>	dīrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus	<i>direct, guide</i>
*dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus	<i>throw down, destroy, disappoint</i>	†discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus	<i>go away</i>
deinde, adv.	<i>thereupon, next</i>	*disciplīna, -ae, f.	<i>training, discipline</i>
†dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus	<i>pick out, choose</i>	dispergō, -ere, -spersī, -spersus	<i>scatter</i>
*dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>point out</i>	*dissimilis, -e, adj.	<i>unlike, dissimi- lar</i>
*dēns, dentis, m.	<i>tooth</i>	distribuō, -ere, -tribuī, -tribūtus	<i>distribute</i>
dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus	<i>put down, put aside</i>	†diū, adv.	<i>a long time</i>
dēsērō, -ere, -seruī, -sertus	<i>give up, abandon</i>	dīversus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>turned away, different</i>
dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitūrus	<i>desist, cease</i>	*dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus	<i>separate, divide</i>
*dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>give up hope, despair</i>	†dō, dare, dedī, datus	<i>give</i>
dēspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus	<i>look down upon, despise</i>	*doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus	<i>teach, inform</i>
dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus	<i>be lacking</i>	*dolor, -ōris, m.	<i>pain, suffering, grief</i>
dētrīmentum, -ī, n.	<i>loss</i>	*domicilium, -ī, n.	<i>dwelling, abode, residence</i>
*deus, -ī, m.	<i>god</i>	*domina, -ae, f.	<i>mistress of a household, lady</i>
*dexter, -tra, -trum, adj.	<i>right (of direction)</i>	*dominus, -ī, m.	<i>master</i>
†dicō, -ere, dīxī, dictus	<i>say, speak</i>	†domus, -ūs, f.	<i>home, house</i>
†diēs, diēī, m. and f.	<i>day</i>	*dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>make a gift, present</i>
		*dōnum, -ī, n.	<i>gift, present</i>
		*dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -itum	<i>sleep, be idle</i>

dubitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	hesitate, doubt	ēripiō, -ere, -ripiū, -reptus	snatch out, free
†dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus	lead	ēruptiō, -ōnis, f.	breaking out, sally
*dum, conj.	while, as long as, provided, until	†et, conj.	and
*duo, duae, duo, num. adj.	two	*et . . et	both . . and
†dux, ducis, m.	leader	*etiam, adv.	also, even
†ē, ex, prep. w. abl.	out of	*etsi, conj.	and if, although
ēdō, -ere, ēdidī, ēditus	put out, put forth	ēventus, -ūs, m.	outcome, result
*ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus	lead out, draw (a sword)	†ex, prep. w. abl.	out of
*efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	work out, accomplish, bring about	*excēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus	go out, withdraw
effugiō, -ere, -fūgi	escape	*excipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus	take out, succeed to
†ego, person. pron.	I	*exeō, -īre, -iī(-īvi), -iturus	go out, withdraw, leave
*egredior, -ī, -gressus	go out, disembark	*exerceō, -ēre, -ui, -itus	train, exercise, practice
ēgregius, -a, -um, adj.	outstanding, distinguished	exercitātiō, -ōnis, f.	training
*ēiciō, -ere, ēiēcī, ēiectus	throw out, drive out	†exercitus, -ūs, m.	trained body, army
emō, -ere, ēmi, ēemptus	buy, take	exiguus, -a, -um, adj.	limited, little
*enim, postpositive conj.	for, indeed	†exīstimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	think, believe
*ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	disclose, announce	*exitus, -ūs, m.	outcome, end
†eō, īre, īvi(ii), iturus	go	expediō, -īre, -īvi, -itus	extricate, free
*eō, adv.	thither, to that place	expeditus, -a, -um, adj.	unencumbered, light-armed
*eōdem, adv.	to the same place	*expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus	drive out, expel
*epistula, -ae, f.	letter, dispatch	experior, -īri, -pertus	try out, test
†eques, -itis, m.	horseman, knight; pl., cavalry	*explōrātor, -ōris, m.	scout
equester, -tris, -tre, adj.	of a horseman, equestrian	*explōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	reconnoiter
*equitātus, -ūs, m.	body of horse- men, cavalry	*expōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus	put forth, set forth
*equus, -i, m.	horse	*expugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	take by storm
		*exspectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	look out for, wait for
		exstruō, -ere, -struxi, -strūctus	pile up, build

*extrā, prep. w. acc.	outside of, beyond	†frāter, -tris, m.	brother
*extrēmus, -a, -um, adj.	farthest, last, the end of	frōns, frontis, f.	forehead, front
*fābula, -ae, f.	tale, story, fable	*frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj.	pertaining to grain
*facile, adv.	easily	†frūmentum, -ī, n.	grain
†facilis, -e, adj.	easy	*frūstrā, adv.	in vain
†faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus	do, make	†fuga, -ae, f.	flight
*factum, -ī, n.	deed	†fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus	flee
*facultās, -tātis, f.	power of doing, ability, chance	funditor, -ōris, m.	slinger
*fāma, -ae, f.	reputation, rumor	*gēns, gentis, f.	family, clan, tribe
famēs, -is, f.	hunger, starvation	*genus, generis, n.	origin, kind, race
*familia, -ae, f.	household	†gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus	carry on
familiāris, -e, adj.	belonging to the household, intimate	*gladiātor, -ōris, m.	gladiator
*fēlix, -īcis, adj.	fertile, happy, fortunate	†gladius, -ī, m.	sword
†fēmina, -ae, f.	woman	†glōria, -ae, f.	renown, glory
ferē, adv.	almost, about	*grātia, -ae, f.	favor, influence, gratitude
†ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus	bear, bring, carry	grātis, adv.	for nothing
ferus, -a, -um, adj.	wild, fierce	grātulātiō, -ōnis, f.	congratulation
fidēlis, -e, adj.	faithful	*grātus, -a, -um, adj.	pleasing, accept- able
†fidēs, -eī, f.	trust, pledge, reliability	*gravis, -e, adj.	heavy, serious
fidūcia, -ae, f.	confidence	†habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus	have, hold
†fīlia, -ae, f.	daughter	*habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	occupy, dwell in
†filius, -ī, m.	son	*hiberna, -ōrum, n.	winter quarters
*finēs, -ium, m.	territory	†hic, haec, hoc, dem. adj.	this
*finiō, -īre, finivī, fīnitus	limit, bound, end	dem. pron.	he, she, it
†finis, -is, m.	end, boundary	*hic, adv.	here, at this point
†finitimus, -a, -um, adj.	neighboring	*hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus	spend the winter
*fiō, fierī, factus	be made, happen, become	†hiems, hiemis, f.	winter
*firmus, -a, -um, adj.	strong	*hodiē, adv.	today
†flūmen, -minis, n.	river	†homō, hominis, m. and f.	man, human being
*fōrma, -ae, f.	shape, form	*honor, -ōris, m.	honor, glory, office
†fortis, -e, adj.	brave	†hōra, -ae, f.	hour
*fortitūdo, -inis, f.	courage, bravery	*hortor, -ārī, -ātus	urge, advise
*fortūna, -ae, f.	chance, fortune	†hostis, -is, m. and f.	enemy
*forum, -ī, n.	market place	hūc, adv.	hither
*fossa, -ae, f.	ditch		

hūmānitās, -tātis, f. humilis, -e, adj.	kindness, culture low, lowly	*incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus *incertus, -a, -um, adj.	set on fire uncertain, doubtful
†iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus *iam, adv.	hurl, throw now, already, presently	incidō, -ere, -cidī †incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus *incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	be fall, happen begin urge on, arouse
iam prīdem, adv. †ibi, adv. †idem, eadem, idem, dem. pron. and adj.	long ago there the same	*incola, -ae, m. and f. incolō, -ere, -colūī *incolumis, -e, adj. inde, adv.	inhabitant dwell in unharmcd thence
*idōneus, -a, -um, adj. *igitur, conj.	suitable therefore, ac- cordingly	indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus *ineō, -īre, -īī, -itus	lead on, influence go into, undertake
*ignis, -is, m. ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	fire be unacquainted with	inermis, -e, adj. *infēlix, -īcis, adj.	unarmed unfruitful, un- happy, un- lucky
*ignōtus, -a, -um, adj. †ille, illa, illud, dem. adj.	unknown that	†inferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātus	bring in, bring against
*immortālis, -e, adj. †impedimentum, -ī, n.	immortal hindrance; pl., baggage	īnfra, adv. and prep. w. acc. *inimīcus, -a, -um, adj.	below unfriendly
*impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus *impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus	hinder drive on, urge on	*inīquus, -a, -um, adj. *initium, -ī, n. *iniūria, -ae, f. *inopia, -ae, f.	uneven, unfair beginning wrong want, lack
†imperātor, -ōris, m. imperātum, -ī, n. †imperium, -ī, n. †imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	commander-in- chief, general command command, power command, impose	*insequor, -ī, -secūtus *īnsidiae, -ārum, f.	follow on, pursue ambush, treachery
impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus †impetus, -ūs, m.	obtain (a request) attack, charge, rush	*īnstituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitūtus īnstitūtum, -ī, n. īnstō, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrus	set up, establish, undertake custom stand on, press on, be at hand
impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus †in, prep. w. abl. and acc.	put on in (w. abl.); into (w. acc.)	*īnstruō, -ere, -struxī, -strūctus †insula, -ae, f. *integer, -gra, -grum, adj.	arrange, marshal island whole

†intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus	understand	*labor, -ōris, m.	toil
†inter, prep. w. acc.	between, among	†labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	toil, suffer
intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus	go between, forbid, veto	lapis, -pidis, m.	stone
interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus	shut off, cut off	*lātītūdō, -dinis, f.	width
*intereā, adv.	meanwhile	*lātus, -a, -um, adj.	wide
intereō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus	perish	*latus, lateris, n.	side
†interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	kill	†laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	praise
*interim, adv.	meanwhile	*laus, laudis, f.	praise, glory
interior, -ius, adj.	inner	lēgatiō, -ōnis, f.	mission, embassy
*intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus	interrupt, stop	*lēgātus, -ī, m.	envoy, deputy
*interrogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	ask (a question)	*legiō, -ōnis, f.	legion
*intervallum, -ī, n.	space between walls, interval	*legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus	pick, choose, read
*intrā, prep. w. acc.	inside, within	*levis, -e, adj.	light, fickle
*inveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus	come upon, find	*lēx, lēgis, f.	law
invītus, -a, -um, adj.	against one's will	*liber, librī, m.	book
†ipse, ipsa, ipsum, dem. pron.	self, very	†liber, -era, -erum, adj.	free
*īra, -ae, f.	anger, wrath	*liberī, -ōrum, m.	(freeborn) children
†is, ea, id, dem. adj.	this, that; pron., he, she, it	†liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	set free
†ita, adv.	thus, so	*libertās, -tātis, f.	freedom
†itaque, adv.	and thus, therefore	*licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum est	it is permitted
*item, adv.	likewise	*lingua, -ae, f.	tongue, language
†iter, itineris, n.	road, march	†littera, -ae, f.	letter (of the alphabet); pl., a letter, letters
†iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus	order, command	*lītus, -oris, n.	coast, shore, beach
*iudicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	judge, decide	†locō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	place, put, arrange
*iugum, -ī, n.	yoke, ridge	†locus, -ī, m.; pl., loca, -ōrum, n.	place
*iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūctus	join	longē, adv.	far, by far
*iūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	take an oath, swear	†longus, -a, -um, adj.	long
*iūs, iūris, n.	right, law	*loquor, -ī, locūtus	talk
iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n.	oath	lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus	play
iūstus, -a, -um, adj.	just, fair	*lūdus, -ī, m.	play, school; pl., games
		*lūna, -ae, f.	moon
		†lūx, lūcis, f.	light
		*magis, adv.	more greatly, more

*magister, -trī, m.	master, teacher, helmsman	†miser, -era, -erum, adj.	wretched
*magistrātus, -ūs, m.	office, official	†mittō, -ere, mīsi, missus	send
*magnitūdō, -inis, f.	greatness, size	*modo, adv.	only, just now
*magnopere, adv.	greatly	†modus, -ī, m.	measure, manner
†magnus, -a, -um, adj.	great	†moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitus	advise, warn
*maiōrēs, -um, m.	ancestors	†mōns, montis, m.	mountain
maleficium, -ī, n.	evil deed	*mora, -ae, f.	delay
mālō, mälle, māluī	prefer	*mорий, -ī, mortuus	die
†malus, -a, -um, adj.	bad, evil	*morum, -ārī, -ātus	delay, tarry
mandātum, -ī, n.	commission	†mors, mortis, f.	death
*mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	hand over, commission	*mōs, mōris, m.	manner, habit
†maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus	stay, remain	†moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus	move
†manus, -ūs, f.	hand, band, troop	*mox, adv.	soon, presently
†mare, -is, n.	sea	mulier, -eris, f.	woman
*maritimus, -a, -um, adj.	of the sea, maritime	†multitūdō, -dinis, f.	large number, crowd
†māter, -tris, f.	mother	†multus, -a, -um, adj.	much; pl., many
*māteria, -ae, f.	timber	†mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus	do a task, build, fortify
†medius, -a, -um, adj.	middle	*mūnitiō, -ōnis, f.	fortification
†memoria, -ae, f.	memory	mūnus, -eris, n.	task, duty, service, offering
*mēns, mentis, f.	mind	†mūrus, -ī, m.	(town) wall
*mēnsa, -ae, f.	table, dish	*nam, conj.	for
*mēnsis, -is, m.	month	nancīscor, -ī, nactus	obtain
*mercātor, -ōris, m.	trader	*narrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	tell, relate
mereō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus	earn, deserve	*nāscor, -ī, nātus	be born
mereor, -ērī, -ītus	earn, deserve	†nātiō, -ōnis, f.	race, people
*meridiēs, -ēī, m.	midday	†nātūra, -ae, f.	nature, character
mētiōr, -īrī, mēnsus	measure out, distribute	†nauta, -ae, m.	sailor
metus, -ūs, m.	fear	†navigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	sail
†meus, -a, -um, adj.	my, mine	†nāvis, -is, f.	ship
†miles, -itis, m.	soldier	†ne, enclitic	interrogative particle
†milia, -um, n., pl.	thousand, thou- sands	†nē, conj.	lest, that not
militāris, -e, adj.	of a soldier	*nec, conj.	and not, nor, neither
*mille, num. adj.	thousand	*nec . . nec	neither . . nor
minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus	lessen	*necessārius, -a, -um, adj.	necessary

*necesse, indecl. adj.	necessary	nūdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	make bare, empty
*negōtium, -ī, n.	business, task	†nūllus, -a, -um, adj.	none, no
*nēmō, nūllius, nēminī, m.	nobody	†numerus, -ī, m.	number
*nē . . quidem	not even	*numquam, adv.	never
*neque . . neque	neither . . nor	†nunc, adv.	now
*nesciō, -īre, -īvi	know not, be unaware	†nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	give news, announce
*neuter, -tra, -trum, pron. adj.	neither (of two)	†nūntius, -ī, m.	news, message, messenger
nēve (neu), conj.	and that not	†ob, prep. w. acc.	against, on account of
*nihil, n. indecl.	nothing	obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus	throw against
*nisi, conj.	if not, unless, except	*obses, -sidis, m. and f.	hostage
*nōbilis, -e, adj.	well-known	*obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus	sit against, besiege
*nōbilitās, -tātis, f.	rank, nobility	obsidiō, -ōnis, f.	siege
*noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus	harm	*obtimeō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus	hold fast, obtain opportunity
noctū, adv.	at night	*occāsio, -ōnis, f.	falling, setting
*nolō, nolle, nōlū	be unwilling	*occidō, -ere, -cidī occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus	fall, set cut down, kill
†nōmen, -minis, n.	name	occultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	hide, conceal
†nōn, adv.	not	occultus, -a, -um, adj.	hidden, secret
*nōndum, adv.	not yet	†occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	seize
nōn iam, adv.	no longer	occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus	run against, meet
nōn modo . . sed etiam	not only . . but also	*ōceanus, -ī, m.	ocean, sea
*nōnne, adv. interrog.	not? (expecting an affirmative answer), if not, whether not	*octāvus, -a, -um, num. adj.	eighth
*nōn nūllus, -a, -um, adj.	some	*octō, num. adj.	eight
nōn numquam, adv.	sometimes	*oculus, -ī, m.	eye
*nōnus, -a, -um, num. adj.	ninth	offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātus	bring against, offer
nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus	recognize	*officiū, -ī, n.	duty
†noster, -tra, -trum, adj.	our, ours	*ōlim, adv.	formerly, some time ago
†nōtus, -a, -um, adj.	known	omnīnō, adv.	altogether, at all
*novem, num. adj.	nine		
†novus, -a, -um, adj.	new		
†nox, noctis, f.	night		

†omnis, -e, adj.	<i>every, all, whole</i>	parum, adv.	(too) little, not at all
onerārius, -a, -um, adj.	<i>suitable for burden, transport (ship)</i>	†parvus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>small</i>
onus, oneris, n.	<i>burden</i>	†passus, -ūs, m.	<i>pace, double step</i>
opera, -ae, f.	<i>work, effort</i>	*pateō, -ēre, patuī	<i>lie open, extend</i>
opiniō, -ōnis, f.	<i>belief, view</i>	†pater, -tris, m.	<i>father</i>
*oportet, -ēre, oportuit	<i>it behooves, ought</i>	*pator, -i, passus	<i>suffer, allow</i>
oppidānus, -ī, m.	<i>townsman; adj., of the town</i>	†patria, -ae, f.	<i>one's country</i>
†oppidum, -ī, n.	<i>town</i>	†paucī, -ae, -a, adj.	<i>a few, few</i>
*opportūnus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>at the right time, suitable</i>	paulātim, adv.	<i>little by little</i>
*opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus	<i>crush, overwhelm</i>	paulisper, adv.	<i>for a little while</i>
oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f.	<i>assault</i>	*paulō, adv.	(by) a little
†oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	<i>attack, assault</i>	*paulum, adv.	(for) a little
ops, opis, f.	<i>aid; pl., opēs, -um, resources</i>	†pāx, pācis, f.	<i>peace</i>
*opus, operis, n.	<i>work</i>	†pecūnia, -ae, f.	<i>money</i>
*ōrātiō, -ōnis, f.	<i>speech</i>	pecus, -coris, n.	<i>cattle</i>
*ōrdō, -dinis, m.	<i>order, rank</i>	*pedes, -ditis, m.	<i>foot-soldier</i>
*orior, -īrī, ortus	<i>rise</i>	pedester, -tris, -tre, adj.	<i>of a foot-soldier, on foot</i>
*ōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	<i>pray, plead</i>	*pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus	<i>strike, beat</i>
*ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus	<i>hold out, show</i>	pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus	<i>hang, suspend, pay through</i>
pābulor, -ārī, -ātus	<i>forage</i>	†per, prep. w. acc.	
pābulum, -ī, n.	<i>fodder</i>	perducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus	<i>lead through, construct</i>
*pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	<i>make peace, subdue</i>	pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus	<i>go through, perish</i>
*paene, adv.	<i>almost</i>	perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus	<i>bear through, endure, announce</i>
pāgus, -ī, m.	<i>district, clan</i>	*perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	<i>accomplish</i>
palūs, -ūdis, f.	<i>swamp, marsh</i>	perfidia, -ae, f.	<i>treachery</i>
*pār, paris, adj.	<i>equal</i>	perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī	<i>flee through, desert</i>
*pāreō, -ēre, -ui	<i>obey</i>	†periculum, -ī, n.	<i>trial, danger</i>
†parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	<i>make ready, prepare</i>	peritus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>experienced, skilled</i>
†pars, partis, f.	<i>part</i>	permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus	<i>stay through, abide</i>
partim, adv.	<i>partly</i>	permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus	<i>allow</i>

*permovēō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus	<i>move strongly, excite</i>	portus, -ūs, m.	<i>harbor</i>
perpetuus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>unbroken, lasting</i>	poscō, -ere, poposci	<i>demand, claim</i>
*persequor, -ī, -secūtus	<i>follow through, pursue</i>	possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus	<i>possess, acquire</i>
*perspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus	<i>see through, understand</i>	†possum, posse, potui	<i>be able, can</i>
†persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus	<i>persuade, convince</i>	†post, prep. w. acc.	<i>after, behind</i>
*perterreō, -ēre, -terrui, -territus	<i>frighten thoroughly</i>	*posteā, adv.	<i>after that, afterwards</i>
*pertineō, -ēre, -tinui	<i>extend, belong to</i>	*posterus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>next, later</i>
*perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	<i>throw into confusion</i>	†postquam (posteāquam), conj.	<i>later than, after</i>
†pervenio, -ire, -vēni, -ventūrus	<i>come through, arrive</i>	*postridiē, adv.	<i>the day after, next day</i>
†pēs, pedis, m.	<i>foot</i>	*postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>demand</i>
†petō, -ere, petivī (petī), petitus	<i>seek, attack, ask</i>	†potēns, -entis, adj.	<i>able, powerful</i>
pīlum, -ī, n.	<i>spear</i>	*potestās, -tātis, f.	<i>power</i>
plānitēs, -ēī, f.	<i>plain</i>	potior, -irī, potitus	<i>get power over, gain possession of</i>
*plēbs, plēbis, f.	<i>common people</i>	potius, adv.	<i>rather, preferably</i>
plērique, -aeque, -aque, adj.	<i>the greater part, the majority</i>	praebeō, -ēre, -bui, -bitus	<i>hold in front, afford, furnish</i>
plērumque, adv.	<i>for the most part, generally</i>	praecipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus	<i>advise, give directions</i>
†poena, -ae, f.	<i>penalty, punishment</i>	praeda, -ae, f.	<i>prey, booty</i>
*poēta, -ae, m.	<i>poet</i>	praefectus, -ī, m.	<i>captain, commander</i>
*polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus	<i>promise</i>	*praefficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	<i>put at the head of</i>
†pōnō, -ere, posui, positus	<i>put, place</i>	*praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus	<i>send ahead</i>
†pōns, pontis, m.	<i>bridge</i>	†praemium, -ī, n.	<i>reward</i>
populus, -ārī, -ātus	<i>lay waste, ravage</i>	praesēns, -entis, adj.	<i>present, in person</i>
†populus, -ī, m.	<i>people, nation</i>	praesertim, adv.	<i>particularly</i>
†porta, -ae, f.	<i>gate</i>	†praesidium, -ī, n.	<i>garrison, protection</i>
†portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	<i>carry</i>	*praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus	<i>stand before, excel, guarantee</i>

*praesum, -esse, -fui	be ahead, be in charge of	†prōgredior, -ī, -gressus	step forward, proceed
*praeter, prep. w. acc.	along, past, besides	†prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus	keep away
*praetereā, adv.	besides this, moreover	prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus	hurl (forward)
*praetor, -ōris, m.	praetor	prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	declare
*premō, -ere, pressī, pressus	press	†prope, adv. and prep. w. acc.	near, nearby
*pretium, -ī, n.	price	†properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	hurry, hasten
*prex, precis, f.	prayer	*propinquus, -a, -um, adj.	nearby; as a noun, kinsman
*prīdiē, adv.	on the day before	*prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus	set forth, propose
*prīmō, adv.	at first	†propter, adv. and prep. w. acc.	near, on account of
*prīmum, adv.	first	*proptereā, adv.	on account of this, therefore
*prīmus, -a, -um, num. adj.	first	prōsequor, -ī, -secūtus	follow on, pursue, escort
†prīnceps, -cipis, m.	leading man, chief	†prōvincia, -ae, f.	province
*prīncipātus, -ūs, m.	leadership	*proximus, -a, -um, adj.	nearest, next, last
*prior, prius, adj.	preceding, former	prūdēns, -entis, adj.	foreseeing, discreet, wise
prīstinus, -a, -um, adj.	former, of old	*pūblicus, -a, -um, adj.	belonging to the people, public
*priusquam, conj.	(sooner than), before, until	†puella, -ae, f.	girl
prīvātus, -a, -um, adj.	apart, private	†puer, puerī, m.	boy
†prō, prep. w. abl.	in front of, in behalf of	*pugna, -ae, f.	fight
*prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus	go forward, advance	†pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	fight
procul, adv.	afar	*pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj.	beautiful
*prōcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī	run forward	pulvis, pulveris, m.	dust
*prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus	lead forward, protract	†putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	think
†proelium, -ī, n.	battle	quā, adv.	by what way, where
profectiō, -ōnis, f.	departure		
prōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	accomplish, gain		
†proficīscor, -ī, profectus	set forth, start		
profiteor, -ērī, -fessus	declare publicly, profess		

*quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesītus	<i>seek, ask</i>	*ratiō, -ōnis, f.	<i>reckoning, plan, reason</i>
*quaestor, -ōris, m.	<i>quaestor</i>	*recēns, -entis, adj.	<i>fresh, new</i>
*quam, conj. and adv.	<i>how, as, than</i>	†recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus	<i>take back, receive</i>
†quantus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>how great, as great</i>	recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>regain, get back</i>
*quārtus, -a, -um, num. adj.	<i>fourth</i>	recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>object, refuse</i>
*quattuor, num. adj.	<i>four</i>	*reddō, -ere, -didi, -ditus	<i>give back, return</i>
†-que, enclitic conj.	<i>and</i>	†redeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus	<i>go back, return</i>
queror, -ī, questus	<i>complain</i>	*reditus, -ūs, m.	<i>return</i>
†quī, quae, quod, rel and inter. pron.	<i>who, which, that</i>	redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus	<i>drive back, reduce</i>
quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pron.	<i>whoever</i>	*redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus	<i>lead back, bring back</i>
*quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, indef. pron.	<i>a certain one, some one</i>	referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus	<i>bring back, report</i>
*quidem, (postposi- tive) adv.	<i>certainly, at least</i>	reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	<i>make over, repair</i>
quiētus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>at rest, peaceful</i>	*rēgina, -ae, f.	<i>queen</i>
quīn, conj.	<i>indeed, that (w. negative expressions of doubt)</i>	†regiō, -ōnis, f.	<i>boundary line, district</i>
*quīnque, num. adj.	<i>five</i>	†rēgnum, -ī, n.	<i>kingdom, royal power</i>
*quīntus, -a, -um, num. adj.	<i>fifth</i>	†regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus	<i>direct, rule</i>
†quis, quid, inter. and indef. pron.	<i>who, any</i>	†relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictus	<i>leave behind</i>
quisquam, quicquam, indef. pron.	<i>any one at all</i>	*reliquus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>left behind, remaining, rest of</i>
*quisque, quaeque, quidque, indef. pron.	<i>each one</i>	*remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus	<i>stay behind, remain</i>
*quō, adv. and conj.	<i>whither</i>	*remittō, -ere, -misi, -missus	<i>send back, let go, relax</i>
†quod, conj.	<i>because</i>	*removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus	<i>move back, withdraw</i>
quod sī, conj.	<i>but if, and if</i>	renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>announce, proclaim</i>
quōminus, conj.	<i>(that less), lest</i>		
quoniam, conj.	<i>inasmuch as, since</i>		
quōque, adv.	<i>also, too</i>		

*repellō, -ere, reppulī, -pulsus	drive back, repulse	saxum, -ī, n.	rock
repente, adv.	suddenly	*scientia, -ae, f.	knowledge
repentinus, -a, -um, adj.	sudden	†sciō, -īre, scīvī, scītus	know
reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus	gain back, discover, find	†scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus	write
†rēs, rei, f.	thing	*scūtum, -ī, n.	shield
rēs frumentāria, rei frumentāriae, f.	grain supply	*secundus, -a, -um, adj.	following, second, favorable
*resistō, -ere, restitī	take a stand, resist	†sed, conj.	but
rēs militāris, rei militāris, f.	warfare	*sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum	sit
†respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus	answer	†semper, adv.	always
respōsum, -ī, n.	answer	†senātor, -ōris, m.	senator
rēs pūblica, rei pūblica, f.	commonwealth	†senātus, -ūs, m.	body of elders, senate
restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus	place back, restore	*sententia, -ae, f.	feeling, opinion
†retineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus	hold back, restrain, detain, retain	*sentīō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus	feel, think, judge
revertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus	turn back, return	*septem, num. adj.	seven
revertor, -ī, revertī	turn back, return	*septimus, -a, -um, num. adj.	seventh
†rēx, rēgis, m.	king	†sequor, -ī, secūtus	follow
*ripa, -ae, f.	bank, shore	servitūs, -tūtis, f.	slavery
†rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	ask, ask for (turned back), again	†servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	keep, save
*rūrsus, adv.		†servus, -ī, m.	slave
†saepe, adv.	often	*sex, num. adj.	six
*sagitta, -ae, f.	arrow	*sextus, -a, -um, num. adj.	sixth
sagittārius, -ī, m.	archer	*sī, conj.	if
†salūs, -ūtis, f.	health, safety	*sīc, adv.	thus, so
*salvus, -a, -um, adj.	safe	sīcut (sīcutī), conj.	just as
*satis, adv.	enough	significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	announce
satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus	do enough, do one's duty, apologize	†signum, -ī, n.	sign, signal, standard
		*silentium, -ī, n.	silence
		†silva, -ae, f.	forest
		*similis, -e, adj.	like, resembling
		*simul, adv.	together, at the same time
		simul ac (atque), conj.	as soon as
		†sine, prep. w. abl.	without
		singulāris, -e, adj.	one by one, extraordinary
		*singulī, -ae, -a, distr. adj.	one at a time

*sinister, -tra, -trum, adj.	left (of direction)	succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessurus	approach, come next
sī quis	if any, whoever	†suī, sibi, sē (sēsē), reflex, pron.	of himself, herself, itself, themselves
†socius, -ī, m.	ally	†sum, esse, fuī, futūrus	be
*sōl, sōlis, m.	sun	summa, -ae, f.	highest sum, total
sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	stir up, tempt	*summus, -a, -um, adj.	highest, greatest
*solum, adv.	only	*sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus	take
*sōlus, -a, -um, adj.	alone, only	*super, adv.	over, above, be- sides, more- over
*solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus	untie, release, perform	*superior, -ius, adj.	higher, former
*somnus, -ī, m.	sleep	†superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	overcome, surpass, defeat
†soror, -ōris, f.	sister	supersum, -esse, -fuī	be over, remain, survive
*spatium, -ī, n.	space	*superus, -a, -um, adj.	upper
*speciēs, -ēī, f.	appearance	supplicium, -ī, n.	punishment
†spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	look at	supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	carry up
†spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	hope	*suprā, adv. and prep. w. acc.	above, beyond
†spēs, speī, f.	hope	*suscipio, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus	take up, undertake
sponte suā	of one's own will, voluntarily	*suspiciō, -ōnis, f.	suspicion
*statim, adv.	at once, immediately	suspīcor, -ārī, -ātus	suspect
statiō, -ōnis, f.	outpost, picket	*sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus	uphold, resist
*statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus	set up, fix, determine	†suus, -a, -um, adj.	his, her, its, their (own)
stīpendium, -ī, n.	payment, tax, campaign	†tam, adv.	thus, so
*stō, stāre, steti, statūrus	stand	tamen, adv.	however, nevertheless
*studeō, -ēre, -uī	be eager, desire	tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus	touch
†studium, -ī, n.	eagerness	†tantus, -a, -um, adj.	so great
†sub, prep. w. acc. and abl.	under, close to		
subducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus	lead under, lead up to, draw up, beach		
*subitō, adv.	suddenly		
sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	assist		
submitto, -ere, -misi, -missus	send under, send to assist, yield		
*subsequor, -ī, -secutus	follow closely		
*subsidiū, -ī, n.	reserve reinforcement, assistance		

*tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	<i>make slow, check</i>	*tribūnus, -ī, m.	<i>tribune</i>
*tardus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>slow</i>	tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus	<i>assign, grant</i>
tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctus	<i>cover, conceal</i>	trīduum, -ī, n.	<i>three days</i>
†tēlum, -ī, n.	<i>missile, weapon</i>	†tū, pers. pron.	<i>thou, you</i>
*tempestas, -tātis, f.	<i>period of time, weather, storm</i>	*tuba, -ae, f.	<i>trumpet</i>
*templum, -ī, n.	<i>sacred precinct, temple</i>	tueor, -ēri, tūtus	<i>gaze at, protect</i>
†temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	<i>try, attempt</i>	†tum, adv.	<i>at that time</i>
†tempus, -poris, n.	<i>time</i>	tumulus, -ī, m.	<i>small hill, mound</i>
†teneō, -ēre, tenuī	<i>hold</i>	tunc, adv.	<i>at that time</i>
*tergum, -ī, n.	<i>back, rear</i>	turpis, -e, adj.	<i>base, disgraceful</i>
†terra, -ae, f.	<i>earth, land</i>	*turris, -is, f.	<i>tower</i>
*terror, -ōris, m.	<i>fright, panic</i>	tūtus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>protected, safe</i>
*tertius, -a, -um, num. adj.	<i>third</i>	†tuus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>thy, thine, your, yours</i>
testūdō, -inis, f.	<i>tortoise, tortoise shell, testudo</i>	†tubi (ubī), adv. and conj.	<i>where, when</i>
†timeō, -ēre, timui	<i>be afraid, fear</i>	*ūllus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>any</i>
timidus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>fearful, cowardly</i>	*ulterior, -ius, adj.	<i>farther, more distant</i>
†timor, -ōris, m.	<i>fear</i>	ultrā, prep. w. acc.	<i>beyond</i>
*toga, -ae, f.	<i>toga</i>	ultrō, adv.	<i>beyond, unasked, voluntarily</i>
*tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus	<i>lift, remove</i>	*ūnā, adv.	<i>together</i>
tormentum, -ī, n.	<i>military engine</i>	unde, adv.	<i>whence</i>
*tot, indecl. adj.	<i>so many</i>	*undique, adv.	<i>from all sides, on all sides</i>
totidem, indecl. adj.	<i>just as many</i>	ūniversus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>all together</i>
†tōtus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>whole</i>	*ūnus, -a, -um, num. adj.	<i>one</i>
†trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus	<i>hand over, entrust, surrender</i>	†urbs, urbis, f.	<i>city</i>
*trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus	<i>lead across</i>	ūsque, adv.	<i>up to</i>
*trahō, -ere, trāxi, tractus	<i>drag, draw</i>	*ūsus, -ūs, m.	<i>use, advantage, experience</i>
†trāns, prep. w. acc.	<i>across</i>	*ut, utī, conj.	<i>that, so that, in order that</i>
*trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itus	<i>go across, cross</i>	uter, utra, utrum, adj.	<i>which of two</i>
*trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>carry across, transport</i>	*uterque, utraque, utrumque, adj.	<i>each of two, both</i>
*trēs, tria, num. adj.	<i>three</i>	*ūtilis, -e, adj.	<i>useful</i>
		†ūtor, -ī, ūsus	<i>use, employ</i>
		*vacuus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>empty</i>
		vadum, -ī, n.	<i>shoal, ford</i>
		vagor, -ārī, -ātus	<i>roam</i>

*valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus	<i>be strong</i>	†vīcus, -ī, m.	<i>village</i>
*validus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>strong, healthy, powerful</i>	†videō, -ēre, vidī, visus	<i>see</i>
*vallēs, -is, f.	<i>valley</i>	†vigilia, -ae, f.	<i>night watch, guard</i>
*vāllum, -ī, n.	<i>rampart</i>	*vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>watch</i>
*vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>lay waste</i>	*vigintī, num. adj.	<i>twenty</i>
vehementer, adv.	<i>strongly</i>	†villa, -ae, f.	<i>farmhouse</i>
*vel, conj.	<i>or</i>	†vincō, -ere, vici, victus	<i>conquer</i>
†veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventūrus	<i>come</i>	vinculum, -ī, n.	<i>bond, fetter</i>
*ventus, -ī, m.	<i>wind</i>	vīnea, -ae, f.	<i>vinea, a movable shed</i>
†verbum, -ī, n.	<i>word</i>	†vir, virī, m.	<i>man</i>
*vereor, -ērī, -itus	<i>fear, respect</i>	†virtūs, -tūtis, f.	<i>manliness, bravery</i>
*vērō adv.	<i>in truth, but</i>	*vīs, vim (acc.), f.	<i>force, violence</i>
versor, -ārī, -ātus	<i>turn about, dwell</i>	†vīta, -ae, f.	<i>life</i>
*verō, -ere, vertī, versus	<i>turn</i>	vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>avoid</i>
*vērum, adv.	<i>truly, but</i>	*vīvus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>alive</i>
vētus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>true</i>	vix, adv.	<i>barely, scarcely</i>
*vesper, -erī, m.	<i>evening</i>	†vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>call</i>
†vester, -tra, -trum, adj.	<i>your, yours</i>	†volō, velle, volui	<i>be willing, wish</i>
vetus, -teris, adj.	<i>old, long- standing</i>	*voluntās, -tātis, f.	<i>willingness, good will</i>
vetustus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>old, ancient</i>	*vōx, vōcis, f.	<i>voice, word</i>
†via, -ae, f.	<i>road</i>	vulgus, -ī, n.	<i>common crowd</i>
vīcinus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>neighboring</i>	†vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>wound</i>
*victor, -ōris, m.	<i>conqueror</i>	†vulnus, -neris, n.	<i>wound</i>
†victōria, -ae, f.	<i>victory</i>		

CHAPTER X*

SELECTIONS FOR TRANSLATION AT SIGHT

1

Roman soldiers of three cohorts are terrified and make for the ships.

Simul, qui in navibus longis remanserant, scalas¹ rapere navesque a terra repellere properabant, ne hostes navibus potirentur. Quibus omnibus rebus perturbati milites nostri cohortium trium, quae in ponte constiterant, cum post se clamorem exaudirent, fugam suorum viderent, magnam vim telorum adversi sustinerent, veriti ne ab tergo circumvenirentur et discessu navium omnino reditu intercluderentur, munitionem in ponte institutam reliquerunt et magno cursu incitati ad naves contenderunt. Quorum pars proximas nacta naves multitudine hominum atque onere depressa est, pars resistens et dubitans, quid esset capiendum consili, ab Alexandrinis² interfecta est.

De Bello Alexandrino, 20 (adapted)

2

The carelessness of a Rhodian shipmaster forces Caesar to fight.

Erat una navis Rhodia in dextro cornu longe ab reliquis collocata. Hanc conspicati hostes non tenuerunt sese magnoque impetu ad eam contenderunt. Cui coactus est Caesar ferre subsidium ne turpem in conspectu hostium contumeliam acciperet. Proelium commissum est magna contentione Rhodiorum, qui cum in omni rebus dimicationibus et scientia et virtute praestitissent, tum maxime illo tempore totum onus sustinere non recusabant ne quod detrimentum suum culpa acceptum videretur. Ita proelium secundissimum est factum; magna multitudo propugnatorum³ est interfecta. Quod nisi nox proeli finem fecisset, tota classe hostium Caesar potitus esset. Hac calamitate perterritis hostibus, adverso vento leniter flante,⁴ naves onerarias Caesar remulco⁵ Alexandriam⁶ deducit.

De Bello Alexandrino, 11 (adapted)

¹ scala, -ae f., a ladder ² Alexandrinus, -a, -um, of or belonging to Alexandria

³ fighting men

⁴ flare, to blow

⁵ tow-line

⁶ Alexandria, -ae f., a city in Egypt

* This chapter was prepared by John K. Colby, Head of Latin Department, Country Day School, Newton, Mass.

3

Regulus refuses to remain at Rome.

Post haec Carthaginienses a Regulo duce, quem ceperant, petiverunt, ut Romam proficisceretur et pacem a Romanis obtineret ac permutationem¹ captivorum faceret. Ille Romam cum venisset, inductus in senatum nihil egit quod Romani expectabant sed dixit se ex illa die, qua in potestatem hostium venisset, Romanum esse destitisse. Itaque senatui persuasit, ne pax cum Poenis² fieret; illos enim fractos multis casibus spem nullam habere: atque oravit, ne tot milia captivorum propter se redderentur. Ipse Carthaginem rediit, offerentibusque Romanis, ut cum Romae tenerent, negavit se in ea urbe mansurum, in qua, postquam hostibus servierat, dignitatem honesti civis habere non posset. Regressus ad Africam omnibus suppliciis interfectus est.

EUTROPIUS, *Breviarium*, II, 25 (adapted)

4

Cassius and Marcellus maneuver against each other.

Cassius fidei magis quam virtuti legionum confidebat. Itaque cum castra castris conlata essent et Marcellus locum idoneum castello cepisset quo prohibere aqua Cassianos posset, Cassius veritus ne genere quodam obsidionis clauderetur in regionibus alienis sibi infestis noctu silentio ex castris proficiscitur celerique itinere Uliam contendit, quod sibi fidele esse oppidum credebat. Hunc Marcellus insequitur et castellis idoneis locis collocatis operibusque in circuitu oppidi continuatis³ Uliam Cassiumque munitionibus clausit. Quae priusquam perficerentur, Cassius omnem suum equitatum emisit; quem magno sibi usui fore credebat si pabulari frumentarique Marcellum non pateretur, magno autem fore impedimento si clausus obsidione et inutilis necessarium consumeret frumentum.

De Bello Alexandrino, 61 (adapted)

¹ exchange

² Poeni, -orum m., Carthaginians

³ continue, to make continuous

5

Caesar summons aid to the help of Africa.

Interim nobiles homines ex suis oppidis profugere et in castra Caesaris devenire et de adversariorum eius crudelitate commemorare coeperunt. Quorum lacrimis ¹ Caesar maxime commotus, cum antea constituisset e castris aestate inita cunctis copiis auxiliisque accitis ² bellum cum suis adversariis gerere, hieme proficisci instituit litterisque celeriter in Siciliam ad Alienum missis imperavit ut sine mora ac nulla excusatione hiemis ventorumque quam primum exercitus sibi transportaretur: Africam provinciam perire funditusque ³ everti ab suis inimicis; quod nisi celeriter sociis esset subventum, praeter ipsam Africam terram nihil, ne tectum ⁴ quidem, quo se reciperent ab illorum scelere insidiisque reliquum futurum.

De Bello Africano, 26 (adapted)

6

Caesar plans to shut off Pompey.

Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar consilium capit ex loci natura. Erant enim circum castra Pompei permulti colles. Hos primum praesidiis tenuit castellaque ibi communiit. Inde, ut loci cuiusque natura ferebat, ex castello in castellum perducta munitione circumvallare Pompeium instituit haec spectans, quod angusta re frumentaria utebatur, quodque Pompeius multitudine equitum valebat, quo minore periculo undique frumentum commeatumque exercitui supportare posset, simul ut pabulatione ⁵ Pompeium prohiberet equitatumque eius ad rem gerendam inutilem efficeret, tertio ut auctoritatem, qua ille maxime apud exteris ⁶ nationes niti ⁷ videbatur, minueret, cum fama per orbem terrarum percrebuisset ⁸ illum a Caesare obsideri neque audere proelio dimicare.

De Bello Civili, 3, 43

¹ lacrima, -ae f., tear

⁴ tectum, -ī n., roof, house

⁷ to depend

² summoned

⁵ foraging

⁸ had become widespread

³ funditus, utterly

⁶ foreign

7

Domitius baffles a crafty enemy.

Haec cum administraret, numquam tamen intermittebat legatos de pace atque amicitia mittere ad Domitium, cum hoc ipso crederet facilius eum decipi¹ posse. At contra spes pacis Domitio in eisdem castris morandi attulit causam. Ita Pharnaces,² amissa proximi temporis occasione, cum vereretur ne cognoscerentur insidiae, suos in castra revocavit. Proxima nocte Pharnaces, interceptis tabellariis³ qui de Alexandrinis⁴ rebus litteras ad Domitium ferebant, cognoscit Caesarem magno in periculo versari atque flagitare⁵ ab Domitio ut quam primum sibi subsidia mitteret propiusque ipse Alexandriam per Syriam accederet. Qua cognita re, Pharnaces fore victoriae loco credebat, si trahere tempus posset, cum discedendum Domitio celeriter putaret. Domitius autem cum se non tuto discessurum arbitraretur, si sine certamine⁶ discederet, ex propinquis castris in aciem exercitum eduxit.

De Bello Alexandrino, 37, 38, 39 (adapted)

8

Caesar's forces strive to reach the hills before those of Afranius. Slaughter of four of Afranius' cohorts.

Erat in celeritate omne positum certamen,⁷ utri prius angustias montesque occuparent; sed exercitum Caesaris viarum difficultates tardabant, Afranii copias equitatus Caesaris insequens morabatur. Res tamen ab Afranianis huc erat deducta, ut, si prius montes, quos petebant, attingissent, ipsi periculum vitarent, impedimenta totius exercitus cohortesque in castris relictas servare non possent; quibus interclusis exercitu Caesaris auxilium ferri nulla ratione poterat. Confecit prior iter Caesar atque ex magnis saxis nactus planitiem in hac contra hostem aciem instruit. Afranius, cum ab equitatu novissimum agmen premeretur, ante se hostem videret, collem quendam nactus ibi constitit. Ex eo loco III cohortes in montem, qui erat in

¹ decipio, -ere, *deceive*

³ *couriers*

⁵ *demand*

⁴ Alexandrinus, -a, -um, *of or belonging to Alexandria*

⁶ *struggle*

² Pharnaces -is m., a king of Pontus

⁷ certamen n., *contest*

in conspectu omnium altissimus, mittit. Hunc cohortes magno cursu iubet occupare, eo consilio, uti ipse eodem omnibus copiis contenderet et mutato itinere iugis Octogesam¹ perveniret. Hunc cum obliquo itinere peterent, conspicatus equitatus Caesaris in cohortes impetum fecit; nec minimam partem temporis equitum vim cohortes sustinere potuerunt omnesque in conspectu utriusque exercitus interficiuntur.

De Bello Civili, I, 70 (adapted)

9

Libo arrives at Brundisium, terrifies Caesar's men, and notifies Pompey that he does not need the rest of the fleet.

Libo profectus ab Orico² cum classe, cui praeerat, navium L, Brundisium³ venit insulamque quae contra portum Brundisinum est, occupavit, quod melius esse arbitrabatur unum locum, qua necessarius nostris erat egressus, quam omnia litora ac portus custodia clausos teneri. Hic repentino adventu naves onerarias quasdam nactus incendit et unam frumento onustam abduxit magnumque nostris terrorem iniecit et noctu militibus ac sagittariis in terram expositis praesidium equitum deiecit et adeo loci opportunitate profecit⁴ uti Pompeium litteris moneret ut naves reliquas, si vellet subduceret et reficeret: sua classe auxilia sese Caesaris prohibeturum.

De Bello Civili, III, 23 (adapted)

10

A battle is interrupted by the appearance of two legions.

Quo cognito, celeriter suo ponte Afranius, quem oppido castrisque coniunctum habebat, legiones IIII equitatumque omnem traiecit duabusque Fabianis occurrit legionibus. Cuius adventu nuntiato L. Plancus, qui legionibus praeerat, necessaria re coactus locum capit superiorem diversamque aciem in duas partes constituit, ne ab equitatu circumveniri posset. Ita congressus impari numero magnos impetus legionum equitatusque sustinet. Commisso ab equitibus proelio signa

¹ Octogesa -ae f., a city

³ Brundisium -i n., a town

² Oricus, -i f., a town

⁴ proficio, -ere, profit

legionum duarum procul ab utrisque conspiciuntur, quas C. Fabius ulteriore ponte subsidio nostris miserat suspicatus fore id, quod accidit, ut duces adversariorum occasione et beneficio fortunae ad nostros opprimendos uterentur. Quarum adventu proelium dirimitur,¹ ac suas uterque legiones reducit in castra.

De Bello Civili, I, 40 (adapted)

11

The arrival of two legions under Sulla routs the Pompeians.

Interim certior factus P. Sulla, quem discedens castris praefecerat Caesar, auxilio cohorti venit cum legionibus duabus; cuius adventu facile sunt repulsi Pompeiani. Neque vero conspectum aut impetum nostrorum tulerunt, primisque deiectis reliqui se verterunt et loco cesserunt. Sed insequentes nostros, ne longius prosequerentur, Sulla revocavit. At plerique existimant, si acrius insequi voluisset, bellum eo die potuisse finire. Pompeiani ex iniquo progressi loco in summo constiterant; si per declive² sese reciperent, nostros ex superiore insequentes loco verebantur; neque multum ad solis occasum temporis supererat; spe enim conficiendi negotii prope in noctem rem duxerant. Ita Pompeius tumulum quendam occupavit, qui tantum aberat a nostro castello, ut telum tormento missum adigi non posset. Hoc consedit loco atque eum communivit omnesque ibi copias continuit.

De Bello Civili, III, 51 (adapted)

12

Pompey refuses to fight at Asparagium. Caesar fools Pompey by leading his forces to Dyrrachium by a circuitous route, and cuts Pompey off from Dyrrachium.

Caesar, postquam Pompeium ad Asparagium³ esse cognovit, eodem cum exercitu profectus, expugnato in itinere oppido Parthinorum in quo Pompeius praesidium habebat, tertio die ad Pompeium pervenit iuxtaque⁴ eum castra posuit et postridie eductis omnibus copiis acie

¹ dirimo, -ere, *break off*

³ a town of Illyria

² declive, -is n., *a steep or sloping place*

⁴ iuxta (prep.) *near*

instructa decernendi potestatem Pompeio fecit. Ubi illum suis locis se tenere animadvertit, reducto in castra exercitu aliud sibi consilium capiendum existimavit. Itaque postero die omnibus copiis magno circuito difficili angustoque itinere Dyrrachium¹ profectus est sperans Pompeium aut Dyrrachium compelli aut ab eo intercludi posse, quod omnem commeatum totiusque belli apparatus eo contulisset; ut accidit. Pompeius enim primo ignorans eius consilium, quod diverso ab ea regione itinere profectum videbat, angustiis rei frumentariae compulsus discessisse existimabat; postea per exploratores certior factus postero die castra movit, breviori itinere se occurrere ei posse sperans. Quod fore suspicatus Caesar militesque hortatus ut aequo animo laborem ferrent, parvam partem noctis itinere intermisso Dyrrachium venit, cum primum agmen Pompei procul cerneretur, atque ibi castra posuit.

De Bello Civili, III, 41 (adapted)

13

Labienus crushes a gallant foe.

Prima luce et nostri omnes erant flumen transportati et hostium acies cernebatur. Labienus milites cohortatus ut suae pristinae virtutis retinerent memoriam atque ipsum Caesarem, cuius ductu saepe hostis tam facile fudissent, praesentem adesse existimarent, dat signum proeli. Primo concursu ab dextro cornu, ubi septima legio constiterat, hostes ita pelluntur ut statim conversi omnem spem salutis in celeritate fugiendi ponerent; ab sinistro, quem locum duodecima legio tenebat, cum primi ordines hostium transire telis concidissent, tamen acerrime reliqui resistebant ne quis suspicionem fugae daret. Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suis aderat atque eos firmo animo cohortabatur. At incerto etiam nunc exitu victoriae, cum septimae legionis tribunis esset nuntiatum quae in sinistro cornu gererentur, post tergum hostium legionem ostenderunt signaque intulerunt. Ne eo quidem tempore quisquam loco cessit, sed circumventi omnes interfectique sunt.

De Bello Gallico, VII, 62 (adapted)

¹ Dyrrachium, -i n., a town

Vercingetorix exerts himself to make good the injury done to his cause by the disaster at Avaricum.

Vercingetorix, ut erat pollicitus, animo laborabat ut reliquas civitates prius donis pollicitationibusque adiungeret quam sibi diffiderent. Huic rei idoneos homines deligebat quorum quisque aut oratione subdola¹ aut amicitia facillime capi² posset. Qui Avarico expugnato refugerant, armandos vestiendosque curat; simul, quo celerius deminutae copiae redintegrarentur, imperat certum numerum militum civitatibus, easque certiores facit quam ante diem in castra illos adduci vellet, sagittariosque omnis, quorum erat permagnus numerus in Gallia, conquiri et ad se mitti iubet. His rebus brevi tempore id quod Avarici perierat expletur. Interim Teutomatus, Olloviconis³ filius, rex Nitiobrigum,⁴ cuius pater ab senatu nostro amicus erat appellatus, cum magno equitum suorum numero et quos ex Aquitania conduxerat ad eum pervenit.

De Bello Gallico, VII, 31 (adapted)

The Romans scorn the offer of Pyrrhus.

Pyrrhus unum ex legatis Romanorum, Fabricium,⁵ sic admiratus est, cum eum pauperem⁶ esse cognovisset, ut quarta parte regni promissa sollicitare vellet, ut ad se transiret, atque a Fabricio contemptus est. Quare cum Pyrrhus Romanorum ingenti admiratione teneretur, legatum, Cineam⁷ nomine, Romam misit, qui pacem aequis conditionibus peteret. Sed pax illis maxime displicuit renuntiandumque Pyrrho est a senatu eum cum Romanis, nisi ex Italia recessisset, pacem habere non posse. Tum Romani iusserunt captivos omnes, quos Pyrrhus reddiderat, infames⁸ haberi, quod armati capi potuissent, nec eos ad veterem statum reverti, priusquam duorum hostium occisorum arma rettulissent. Ita legatus Pyrrhi reversus est.

¹ subdolos, -a, -um, wily

² capi, from capere, win over

³ Ollovico, -onis m.

⁴ Nitiobriges, -um m., an Aquitanian tribe

⁵ Fabricius, -i m.

⁶ pauper, -eris m., a poor man

⁷ Cineas, -ae m.

⁸ infamis, -e, disgraced

16

*Because of Caesar's defeat, the town of Gomphi
decides not to admit him.*

Coniuncto exercitu Caesar Gomphos pervenit, quod est oppidum primum Thessaliae¹ venientibus ab Epiro;² quae gens paucis ante mensibus ultro ad Caesarem legatos miserat qui ab eo peterent ut suis omnibus facultatibus uteretur, praesidiumque ab eo militum petierat. Sed eo fama iam praecurrerat de calamitate illa quam Caesar apud Dyrrachium³ acceperat. Itaque Androstenes, qui Thessaliae erat praepositus, cum se victoriae Pompei⁴ comitem⁵ esse mallet quam socium Caesaris in rebus adversis, et portas oppidi praecludit et ad Scipionem⁶ Pompeiumque nuntios mittit ut sibi subsidio veniant: se confidere munitionibus oppidi si celeriter succurratur; oppugnationem sustinere non diu posse. Caesar castris munitis suos docuit quantum iis prodesset ad sublevandam omnium rerum inopiam potiri hoc oppido pleno atque opulento.

De Bello Civili, III, 80 (adapted)

17

*King Pharnaces tries to avoid a battle, first by friendly phrases,
afterwards by delay.*

Cum Caesar in Pontum⁷ venisset, legati a Pharnace missi ad eum adeunt atque orant ne eius adventus hostilis esset: facturum enim omnia Pharnacem quae impetrata essent. Maxime commemorabant nulla Pharnacem auxilia contra Caesarem Pompeio⁸ dare voluisse, cum Deiotarus, qui dedisset, tamen amicitia eius uteretur. Caesar respondit se fore aequissimum Pharnaci si quae polliceretur exsecuturus esset. Monuit autem lenibus verbis legatos ne nimis⁹ eo gloriarentur¹⁰ beneficio quod auxilia ad Pompeium non misissent; imperavit ut ex

¹ Thessalia, -ae f., *Thessaly*, a country in Greece

² Epirus, -i f., a province in Greece

³ Dyrrachium, -i n., a town

⁴ Pompeius, -i m., *Pompey*, a Roman

⁵ comitem, equivalent to socium

⁶ Scipio, -onis m., a Roman

⁷ Pontus, -i m., *the Pontus* (region about the Black Sea)

⁸ Pompeius, -i m., *Pompey*, a Roman

⁹ nimis (adv.) *too much*

¹⁰ gloriator, 1, *boast*

Ponto rex decederet omniaque restitueret sociis civibusque Romanis quae iis eripuisset. Sed Pharnaces liberaliter omnia pollicitus, cum Romam contendentem Caesarem speraret facilius crediturum suis promissis quo celerius ad res magis necessarias proficisceretur, decedendi diem postulare longiorem coepit. Caesar cognita calliditate¹ hominis celerius omnium opinione proelium commisit.

De Bello Alexandrino, 69–71 (adapted)

18

Miltiades urges Darius' Greek guards to destroy a bridge which Darius had built for his Scythian expedition.

Eisdem temporibus Persarum rex Dareus ex Asia in Europam exercitu trajecto Scythis bellum inferre decrevit. Pontem fecit in Histro² flumine, qua copias traduceret. Eius pontis dum ipse abesset, custodes reliquit principes quos secum ex Ionia duxerat; quibus singulis illarum urbium perpetua dederat imperia. Sic enim facillime putavit se Graeca lingua³ loquentes qui Asiam incoherent sub sua retenturum potestate, si amicis suis oppida tuenda tradidisset; quibus se oppresso nulla spes salutis relinqueretur. In hoc fuit tum numero Miltiades. Hic, cum crebri adferrent nuntii male rem gerere Dareum premique a Scythis, hortatus est pontis custodes ne a fortuna datam occasionem liberandae Graeciae dimitterent. Nam si cum eis copiis quas secum transportaverat interisset Dareus, non solum Europam fore tutam, sed etiam eos qui Asiam incoherent Graeci genere liberos a Persarum futuros dominatione et periculo. Id facile effici posse: ponte enim deleto, regem vel hostium ferro vel inopia paucis diebus interiturum esse.

NEPOS, *Miltiades*, III (adapted)

19

Hannibal finds out by a trick which is the ship of King Eumenes.

Hannibal socios convocavit iisque praecepit omnes ut in unam Eumenis regis concurrerent navem. Dixit autem se facturum esse ut socii scirent in qua nave rex Eumenes veheretur. Quem si aut

¹ calliditas, -atis f., cunning

² the lower Danube

³ tongue, language

cepissent aut interfecissent, magno eis pollicetur praemio fore. Cohortatione militum facta classis ab utrisque in proelium deducitur. Quarum acie constituta, priusquam signum pugnae daretur, Hannibal ut demonstraret suis quo loco Eumenes esset, nuntium in scapha¹ cum litteris mittit. Qui ubi ad navis adversariorum pervenit, litterasque ostendens se regem quaerere dixit, statim ad Eumenem deductus est, quod nemo dubitabat quin aliquid de pace esset scriptum. Nuntius ducis nave declarata suis, eodem unde erat egressus se recepit. At Eumenes solutis² litteris nih' in eis repperit nisi quae ad irideadum³ eum pertinerent.

NEPOS, *Hannibal*, X, XI (adapted)

20

A sally made by Caesar's German auxiliaries dismays the Gauls.

Interim crebro⁴ paucis utrimque⁵ procurrentibus inter bina castra⁶ palude interiecta contendebatur; quam tamen paludem non numquam aut nostra auxilia Germanorum transibant acriusque hostis insequabantur, aut hostes pari cum virtute transgressi nostros longius summovebant.⁷ Dum haec geruntur, Germani, quos eo consilio Caesar transduxerat Rhenum⁸ ut suis equitibus interpositi proeliantur, audacius universi paludem transierunt paucisque in resistendo interfectis contineri non potuerunt quominus⁹ reliquam multitudinem hostium pertinaciter¹⁰ insequerentur. Quo impetu repentino factum est ut non solum ii qui aut gladiis opprimebantur aut telis vulnerabantur timore perterrerentur sed etiam ii qui suis laborantibus subsidium ferre consueverant turpiter refugerent. Neque vero prius finem fugiendi fecerunt quam se in castra suorum receperunt. Quorum periculo sic omnes copiae Gallorum sunt perturbatae ut vix iudicari posset utrum¹¹ secundis rebus insolentiores an adverso casu timidiores essent.

HIRTIUS, *De Bello Gallico*, VIII, 10 and 13 (adapted)

¹ scapha, -ae f., boat

² solvo, -ere, solvi, solutus, open

³ irideo, -ere, ridicule

⁴ crebro (adv.)

⁵ utrimque (adv.) on both sides

⁶ bina castra, i.e., of Caesar and the Gauls

⁷ summoveo, -ere, drive off

⁸ Rhenus, -i, m., the Rhine (river)

⁹ quominus (conj.) from

¹⁰ pertinaciter (adv.) persistently

¹¹ utrum (interrog.) whether

CHAPTER XI*

ROMAN BACKGROUND

I. OUTLINE SURVEY OF ROMAN HISTORY

The Roman kingdom. No one knows when or how Rome was founded. The Romans told many fascinating stories about their origin, and reckoned their dates from 753 B.C. We do know that Rome was for a long time a city-nation with a king (*rex*), and that a senate (*senatus*) of nobles and an assembly (*comitia*) of freemen helped the king rule. The Roman kings waged many wars and won control of about one third of their home district (*Latium*) in Italy. The last of the kings was overthrown by the nobles about 510 B.C.

The early republic. Rome then became a republic, ruled by representatives of the people. Two officers (*consules*), elected yearly, headed the state, and others were added gradually. The senate and assembly were retained. A bitter struggle between the common people (*plebs*) and the nobles (*patricii*) for power ended about 367 B.C. by a recognition of equal rights for all free citizens. No great conquests were made during this period.

The middle republic. From 367 through 266 B.C. the Romans continued and completed the conquest of Italy north to the Po River, and organized and ruled splendidly the entire peninsula almost as a single nation. A series of wars against outside nations (264-146 B.C.) made Rome the one great power of the Mediterranean world. The fiercest and most important of these (the Punic Wars) were waged against Carthage of North Africa, whose general, Hannibal, very nearly succeeded in crushing Rome. Most of the newly conquered territory was divided into provinces under the absolute rule of governors appointed at Rome.

The later republic. The Romans were unable for a while to deal successfully with the many new and difficult problems of government and social changes that arose from their conquests. They became so corrupt that a virtuous, honorable citizen was an exception. Civil wars and fierce class-strife between the poor and the rich, the slaves and

* This chapter was prepared by W. D. Pearson, Head of Latin Department, Milford School, Milford, Conn.

the free, the Romans and their subjects, marked the period from 146 B.C. to 31 B.C. Julius Caesar fought his way to a dictatorship and made many needed reforms (46-44 B.C.). His heir and grandnephew, Octavius, made himself master of the Roman world in 31 B.C.

The early empire. Octavius, better known as Augustus (*the Majestic*), is usually regarded as the first Roman emperor. He established internal peace, harmony and order, and directed extensive foreign conquests. Ancient civilization reached its height during the first two centuries of the empire (31 B.C.-180 A.D.). Government was efficient; prosperity prevailed; morality improved. Among the ablest emperors of this period were Vespasian, Trajan (under whom the empire reached its greatest extent in 117 A.D.), Hadrian, Antoninus Pius and Marcus Aurelius.

The middle empire. The empire almost broke up in the third century because of a lack of a definite method of succession to the throne and the need of new methods in government to fit changed conditions. There were constant civil wars and a rapid succession of emperors, most of whom were weak or evil.

The later empire. Diocletian (reigned 284-305 A.D.) made such thorough and statesmanlike changes in government that the empire regained for a time some of its old vigor. The most famous of his many reforms was dividing the empire into two main parts (west and east) with two emperors, supposed to rule as partners. The empire continued, however, to decline. It had become wornout from many causes, the greatest of which were probably a decline in population and heavy taxation. The two most outstanding emperors after Diocletian were Constantine the Great (312-337 A.D.) and Theodosius the Great (379-395 A.D.).

The barbarian occupation. After 395 A.D. the Eastern and Western empires were really separate states. The Eastern empire, with its capital at Constantinople, endured more than a thousand years longer. Early in the fifth century Germanic invaders began to occupy permanently different sections of the Western empire and to establish in it kingdoms of their own. In 476 A.D. a German chief, Odovaker, dethroned Romulus Augustulus, the last Western Roman emperor.

Rome's position in history. Rome stands in history chiefly for government, law and organization — definite political and social order. Her genius was revealed at its best during the middle republic and the early empire.



THE ROMAN EMPIRE AT ITS GREATEST EXTENT

The northern boundary of the empire at its greatest extent was the Rhine and the Danube, except for Britain, and a bit of Germany between the middle Rhine and upper Danube, and Dacia. The Tigris-Euphrates valley was held a very short time. When by

II. ROMAN CHARACTER

No description of Roman character can, of course, fit every period or all Romans within any one period. But the Romans did possess certain typical qualities. On the whole, unless corrupted by outside influences, they were industrious, home-loving, simple and frugal in their habits, patient, orderly, reverent of the gods, courageous, honorable privately and publicly, stern in discipline, and patriotic. They were brilliant organizers.

On the other hand (although many exceptions must be made), they were crude and stubborn, and scorned learning, the fine arts, and many of the niceties of civilized life. Certain of their defects were the result of virtues carried to an extreme. Frugal habits, for example, led sometimes to miserliness, and patriotism to cruelty.

Roman history is full of stories that illustrate Roman characteristics. Even if many of these stories are not true, they all reveal either what foreigners thought of the Romans or what the Romans admired or blamed in themselves.*

III. ROMAN DAILY LIFE

The Roman family. Domestic ties meant much to the Romans. At the head of each household (*familia*) was the father (*pater familias*), who was supreme master over the lives and fortunes of every other member of his household as long as he lived. Only his own free will or loss of citizenship might break a father's authority. His wife (*mater familias*), in spite of her husband's legal authority over her, enjoyed in the average household full freedom of action, and held a position of dignity and influence. She managed all the ordinary affairs of the household. The sons (*filii*), the unmarried daughters (*filiae familias*),

*The student should become acquainted with the following especially striking stories. Others can readily be found:

The founding of Rome by Romulus; the theft of the Sabine women; the Curiatii and Horatii; Horatius at the bridge; Junius Brutus punishes his sons; Marcus Manius and the Gauls; Cincinnatus; the career of Spurius Cassius; the Samnite Pontius and the Romans; Manius Curio and the Samnite ambassadors; Pyrrhus and Fabricius; Regulus and the Carthaginians; Maximus the Delayer; the defeat of Hannibal; the career of Cato the Censor; the struggle of the Gracchi.

the households of the married sons, and the slaves, composed the rest of the household. Roman good-sense and family affection, public opinion, and religious feeling, made extremely harsh paternal punishments more and more uncommon after a very early period. Priests might pronounce a cruel father accursed, so that he would be shunned by most people.

The education of children. Educational methods varied naturally according to the period. In early times the parents were the sole teachers, and even much later most parents helped actively in educating the children. The chief qualities taught were obedience, reverence, modesty, respect for authority, self-control, self-reliance, a practical outlook upon life, and patriotism. A chief aim was the development of a strong, healthy body. Boys engaged in many kinds of athletic contests, and learned the art of war; girls were trained in household arts. Until about 200 B.C., the only "book" subjects taught were reading, writing and very elementary arithmetic, and almost the only text was the twelve tables of the laws, which were committed to memory. The rich and fairly well-to-do employed private tutors (usually slaves or freedmen), while the middle class sent their children to private schools. Here boys and girls were instructed together in small classes, although girls more frequently than boys received their entire education at home. There was no compulsory public education. But education was "public," in that a school was often conducted on an open porch facing a public street, and much time was spent in oral drill in unison. Many children were accompanied to school by special slaves (*pedagogues*), who supervised their conduct and acted as special tutors. There were a number of holidays and a very long summer vacation from school and tutoring. Formal education ended about the seventeenth year. After 200 B.C. the course of study became broader, as there was an influx of Greek teachers, who opened many new schools. The study of the Greek language and literature became more and more popular. Still later Latin literature was added to the course. Also after 200 B.C., more and more stress was laid upon higher education, either under learned lecturers, or in schools that might fairly be called "colleges" or "universities."

Houses. Roman houses were originally small huts, usually of one room, with a hole in the roof for chimney and skylight, and a single door. Rooms, varying in number, and openings for windows were added later; while the former hut became a central hall (*atrium*),

Furniture was very simple — wooden couches, tables and stools ; and crude lamps and braziers gave heat and light when necessary. After about 200 B.C., those who could afford it built and lived much more sumptuously. The *atrium* was retained as a front hall, while to the rear of it was the large central hall (*peristylum*), in great part open to the sky, flanked by beautiful columns, and often containing a pool, fountain and gardens. There were two stories, and many rooms for a great variety of purposes. All decorations and appointments were luxurious. The poor lived in frail, crowded tenements of several stories. It became fashionable for the wealthy to maintain country homes (*villae*), with all the comforts of city homes, and extensive, splendidly adorned grounds.

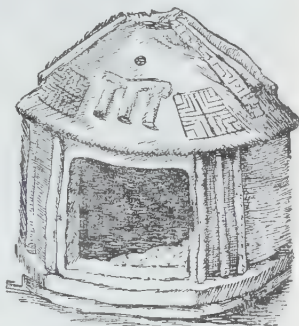
Servants. Practically all servants were slaves, who became more numerous and cheaper as Roman conquests were extended. A slave might be freed by his master and become a freedman (*libertus*), but he was still obligated in a number of ways to his former master. Since most slaves were prisoners of war, they were sometimes the equals or superiors of their masters, socially and intellectually. These were, in general, well cared for, and accorded positions of responsibility. Their very cheapness, however, helped subject the majority of common slaves to very harsh treatment, and horrible slave insurrections occurred during the last days of the republic. As people became kinder under the empire, a number of laws were passed for the protection of slaves.

Meals. The Roman meals were :

(1) *Ientaculum* : A very light breakfast upon arising. This consisted of a bit of bread and wine, and possibly some cheese, an olive or so, etc.

(2) *Cena* : The dinner or principal meal. Any variety of dishes of fish, fowl, meat, vegetables, porridge, bread, fruit, etc. might be served. In early times it was taken at noon. It was finally postponed as the evening meal by all, except manual laborers.

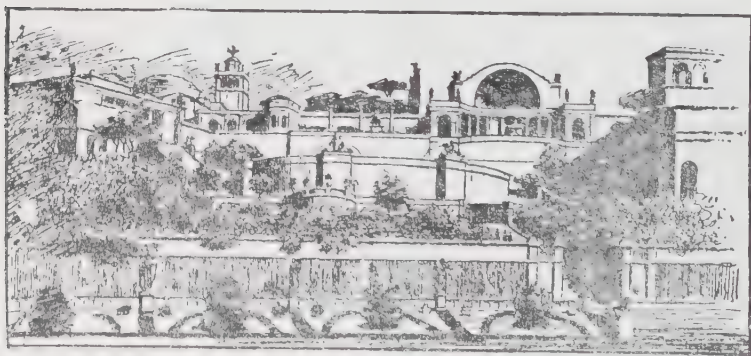
(3) *Vesperna* : A fairly substantial supper, taken toward evening by those who took dinner at noon.



AN EARLY ROMAN HUT



INSIDE A ROMAN HOUSE



A ROMAN VILLA

(4) **Prandium**: A luncheon around noon, for those who took dinner later.

(5) **Merenda**: A late **prandium**.

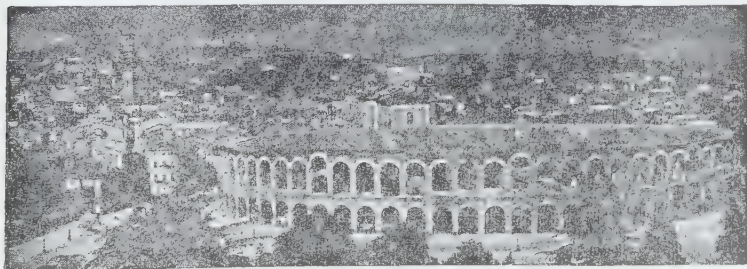
Most people took three meals a day, although many took only two (*ientaculum* and *cena*). Early Romans sat at their meals, but reclining became almost universal later among the middle and upper classes.

Dress. Roman dress was marked by its simplicity. A man wore a linen loin cloth, a short-sleeved woolen shirt (*tunica*), reaching to the knees, and in public a white woolen blanket (*toga*) thrown gracefully about him. He had an outer cloak for inclement weather. A woman wore either one or two tunics and a robe (*palla*), the material, style and color of which might be greatly varied. A man usually wore a signet-ring, and women displayed bracelets, chains and other jewelry in great profusion. Although hats were not unknown, they were very seldom worn, but women arranged their hair in artistic coiffures. Both sandals and shoes were worn. There were no stockings. Children of both sexes wore a special *toga* with a purple stripe (*toga praetexta*).



ROMAN MATRON

Games and amusements. Amusements, although at first very simple and few, played a great part in Roman life after about 250 B.C. Some of the chief amusements were competitive games of skill, chance and physical prowess, carnivals, theatrical performances,



AMPHITHEATER



A CHARIOT RACE IN THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS

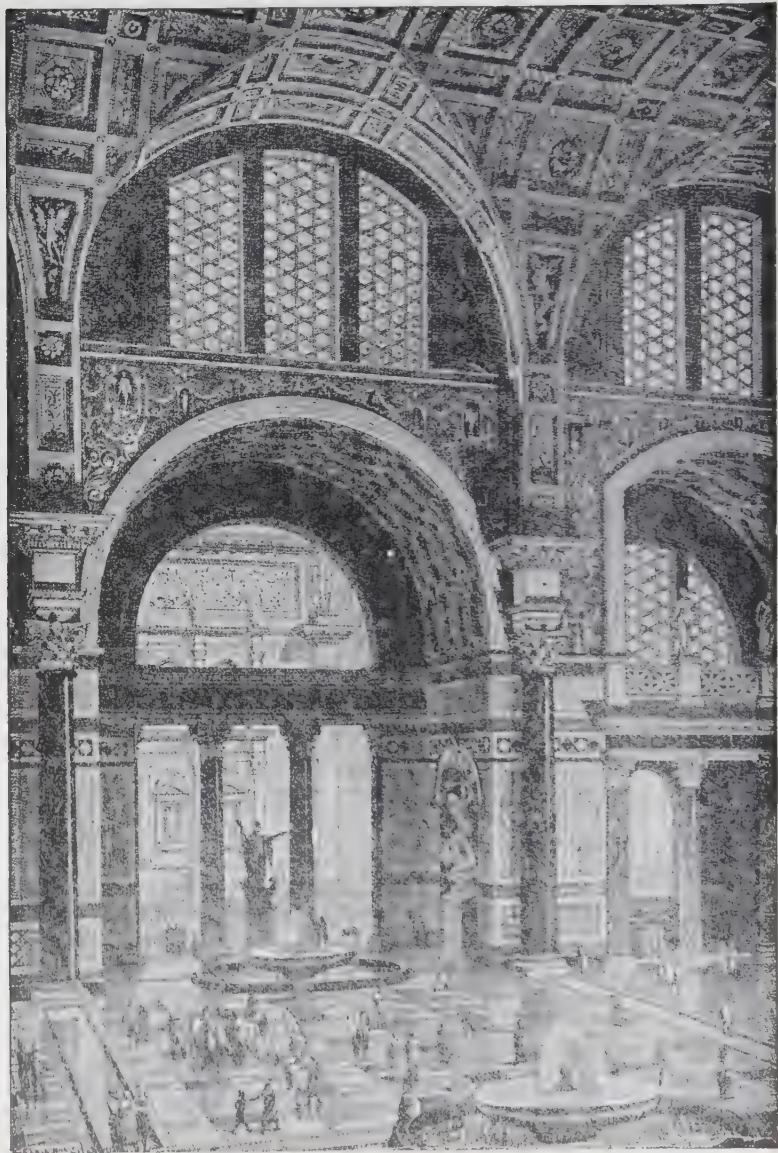
gambling, dinner-parties, bathing, traveling, hunting, fishing, boating, and studying and reading. For children there were many toys, such as dolls, tops, etc., and numerous games, some of which were very similar to those played by children to-day. Toward the end of the republic and throughout the empire, the principal amusements were brutal spectacles in amphitheaters, where men, armed variously (*gladiatores*), fought to the death, in different combinations. Often men fought beasts, or beasts fought each other. The greatest amphitheater at Rome was the *Colosseum*, which held about ninety thousand spectators. Chariot races were second in popularity only



A ROMAN AQUEDUCT

to gladiatorial shows. At Rome these were run in the *Circus Maximus*, which was also used for other spectacles, and which accommodated about one hundred fifty thousand.

Water supply. Water from wells and the Tiber River was so unwholesome that about 300 B.C. the Romans began to bring water to their city from distant hills through magnificent aqueducts. There were finally about a dozen of these, one of which was sixty miles long. They were covered channels of stone or brick, and were run underground through hills and on imposing arches across valleys and plains. Reservoirs at Rome sent the water through clay or leaden pipes to public fountains, public baths and private houses. Owners of houses paid a water-tax. Ancient Rome was much better supplied with water



HALL OF THE BATHS OF CARACALLA

than modern Rome, with many times the quantity necessary for ordinary purposes. Several of the ancient aqueducts are still in use. In the same way the Romans brought water to many other cities.

Public baths. The Romans borrowed the idea of public baths (*balneae* or *thermae*) from the Greeks, and they became a chief source of diversion. The Romans, however, far surpassed the Greeks in the size and splendor of their baths and the many attractions they offered. They were huge buildings, open from sunrise to sunset, most luxuriously equipped and decorated, where it was possible to enjoy any kind of



A ROMAN SHOP

bath — hot, cold, tepid, vapor, or a plunge, rub-down, etc. They contained lounging-rooms, exercise-rooms, and often gardens, art-galleries, and libraries. The fees were negligible, and children were admitted free of charge. Rich and poor, high and low, bathed together, and even emperors bathed at times with their subjects. Among a certain leisure class it became common to spend many hours a day at the baths, to take lengthy “courses of baths,” or to bathe many times a day. Among the most famous baths at Rome were those built by Titus, Trajan, Caracalla, and Diocletian.

Streets and roads. Most city-streets were narrow and dingy, and ran between rows of houses, or tenements of several stories, built wall to wall, the front ground-floors of which were occupied by shops.

Streets were usually paved with slabs of stone, and some were provided with sidewalks. Streets in well-to-do sections were wider, and the buildings less crowded. Traffic, except on foot, was impossible in many streets, and forbidden in others. As might be expected from a great conquering and governing people, the Romans constructed an extensive system of highways, connecting the chief cities and towns under their sway. These were all smoothly graded and heavily paved. Some are in use to-day, while great modern highways are laid over the



ALONG THE APPIAN WAY

original beds of others. The most celebrated Roman road was the Appian Way, connecting Rome with the southeastern Italian seaport, Brundisium.

Police and fire protection. The first regular Roman police and fire-fighting force was created in the first days of the empire. Watchmen, called *vigiles*, acted as both policemen and firemen. There were a number of companies (*cohortes*) of about one thousand each, each under its own captain (*tribunus*). Above the captains was the "commissioner" (*praefectus vigilum*). Scattered about Rome were a number of station-houses. As policemen, the *vigiles* were detailed to duty in public places, much as our own policemen, and they possessed much

authority. In the station-houses were kept buckets, ropes, axes, etc., for them to use when they turned firemen. Sometimes they used also a rude "fire-engine," worked by hand. They were much more efficient as policemen than as firemen. Fires were very common, and, when once under way, were seldom extinguished.

IV. GEOGRAPHY

Parts of Gaul were already under Roman dominion before Caesar's conquests. These were (1) *Gallia Citerior* (Hither Gaul), also called *Gallia Cisalpina* (Gaul this side of the Alps), and (2) *Gallia Ulterior* (Further Gaul), also called *Gallia Transalpina* (Gaul beyond the Alps) or simply *Provincia*. Even to-day this latter district is known as *Provence*. Hither Gaul, comprising the part of North Italy drained by the Po River, was won by the Romans in a series of campaigns (266-222 B.C.), and made a province in 81 B.C. Further Gaul was gradually "appropriated" as a connecting link with Spain in the seventy-five years or so after the winning of Spain from Carthage (202 B.C.), and was finally conquered and annexed as a province (125-121 B.C.).

The part of Gaul conquered by Caesar was the territory between the Pyrenees Mountains and the Rhine River, approximately the greater part of modern France, and all of modern Belgium.

V. CAUSES OF THE GALLIC WARS

Conquest by northern barbarians was an ever-present danger to the Romans. Tribes of Gauls despoiled Italy at will and captured and burned Rome itself in 390 B.C. The Teutones and Cimbri, German tribes, shortly before 100 B.C., plundered much of Gaul and Spain, defeated a number of Roman armies, and threatened Rome. Marius, the "Savior of Rome," almost annihilated them in two great battles. In the years following, both Gauls and Germans became more and more restless. Gaul was torn by political factions and the feuds of disorderly chiefs, and great numbers of Germans were crossing into Gaul, often at the invitation of Gauls themselves, who wished their help against other Gauls. All this menaced not only Italy itself eventually, but immediately the Roman province in South Gaul, where many Romans had settled and other Romans had heavy financial interests at stake.

LOCATE:

- Gallia Cisalpina
- Provincia
- Aquitania
- Belgium
- Britannia
- Germania

Mountains:

- Alpes (Alps)
- Pyrenaei (Pyrenees)
- Iura (Jura)

Rivers:

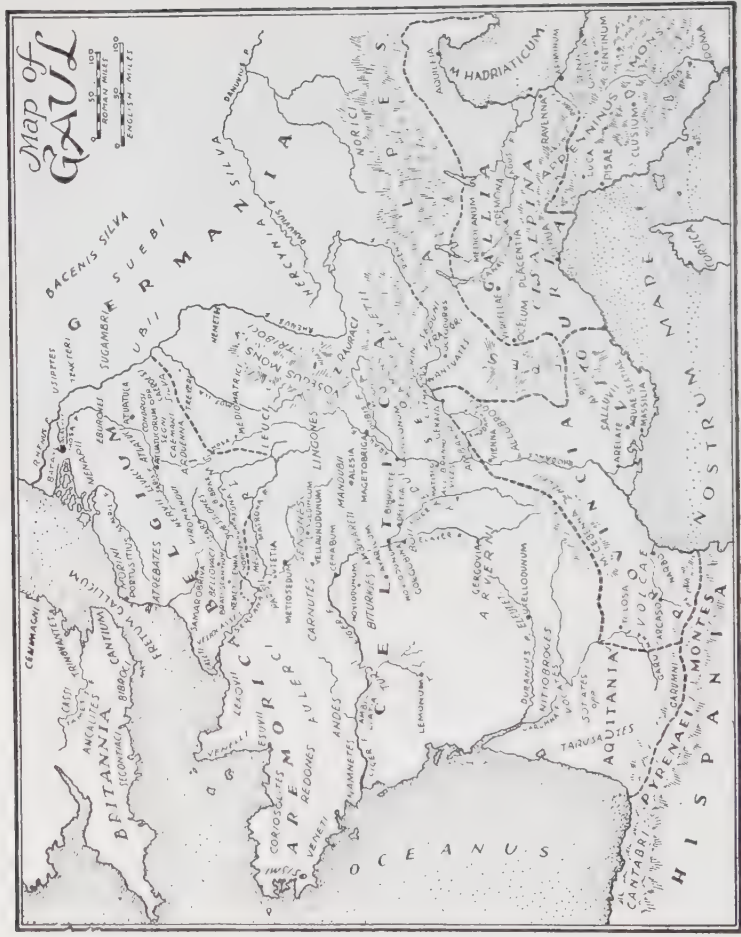
- Rhenus (Rhine)
- Axona (Aisne)
- Sequana (Seine)
- Matrona (Marne)
- Liger (Loire)

Towns:

- Noviodunum (Soissons)
- Bibrax (Bièvre, near Rhims)
- enabum (Orleans)
- Narbo (Narbonne)
- Bibracte (Autun on Mont Beuvray)
- Alesia (Alise Ste. Reine)

Tribes:

- Helvetii
- Nervii
- Veneti
- Atrebatii
- Menapii
- Usipetes
- Tencteri
- Severii
- Eburones
- Carnutes
- Arverni
- Haedui
- Mandubii



VI. SUMMARY OF CAESAR'S GALLIC WARS

Book I (58 B.C.). A brief, clear description of the geography of Gaul is followed by a lively account of Caesar's first Gallic campaign. The Helvetii, cramped for territory, attempt a huge migration from East Gaul into West Gaul, threatening the Roman province to the south and also threatening Gallic friends of the Romans. Caesar pursues them, defeats them in battle and forces the survivors to return home. He then attacks Ariovistus, an arrogant and powerful German chief, who has settled with many of his people in East Gaul. After a crushing defeat, the Germans flee across the Rhine.

Book II (57 B.C.). The northern tribes of the Belgae ally themselves against the Romans and begin to concentrate their forces. Swift movements by Caesar cause the Belgae to fear for their supplies and to disband. After forcing separately the submission of several tribes, Caesar marches against the Nervii and their allies. A surprise attack by the Nervii results in a decisive Roman victory after a desperate battle. Meanwhile a number of tribes along the coast of Northwest Gaul promise obedience. Caesar scatters his forces for the winter in such a way as to prevent a successful uprising.

Book III (57-56 B.C.). Alpine tribes attack the winter quarters of a Roman legion, that fights its way out and retreats successfully. A victory of Caesar's fleet over the Veneti of Northwest Gaul is followed by the surrender of that district. Meanwhile lieutenant Q. Titurius Sabinus routs the forces of the Venelli and other tribes friendly to the Veneti. Lieutenant Publius Crassus wins for the Romans most of Aquitania. Caesar attacks two unconquered Belgian tribes, the Morini and Menapii, compels them to retreat, but leaves off pursuit because of bad weather.

Book IV (55 B.C.). Caesar expels from North Gaul across the Rhine the German Usipetes and Tencteri, after a shameful massacre of men, women and children. He bridges the Rhine and invades Germany, in order to strike terror into the Germans, but returns to Gaul after eighteen days. An expedition to Britain, with many sensational features, does little more than acquaint the Romans with the land and the people.

Book V (54 B.C.). Invading Britain with a larger force than before, Caesar is opposed especially by the chieftain, Cassivellaunus, who annoys the Romans with his war-chariots. In spite of many successes,

Caesar makes no lasting conquests in the island. Revolting Gauls draw from their winter quarters into ambush two of Caesar's lieutenants, Q. Titurius Sabinus and L. Aurunculeius Cotta, and kill them and most of their men. Reënforced, the Gauls then storm the camp of another lieutenant, Q. Cicero, who gallantly resists them until the arrival of Caesar with an army. A foremost rebel, Indutiomarus, is finally killed by Roman cavalry.

Book VI (53 B.C.). Caesar strengthens his army to make up the losses sustained the previous year, forcefully checks a number of revolts in North Gaul, and conquers the Menapii. Meanwhile lieutenant T. Labienus vanquishes the Treveri. Caesar now joins with Labienus, invades Germany a second time, and forces the German Suebi to retreat before him. There follows a description and comparison of the customs of Gauls and Germans, and a description of the geography and animals of Germany. Returning to Gaul, Caesar stamps out insurrections, and vainly attempts the capture of Ambiorix, a chief of the Eburones, his greatest enemy in North Gaul.

Book VII (52 B.C.). After a massacre of Roman citizens at Cenabum of the Carnutes, the Gauls arise against the Romans in one final, gigantic rebellion under the heroic chief, Vercingetorix, of the Arverni. Almost every Gallic tribe, even former sturdy friends, such as the Haedui, eventually lines up with Vercingetorix. A brutal war, with varied fortune, is waged by both sides. Caesar suffers some serious reverses. Vercingetorix is driven at last to take refuge with an army of almost one hundred thousand in Alesia, a town of the Mandubii. Caesar invests the town with mighty works, wrecks every attempt at relief, and compels its surrender after a fearful siege. (Vercingetorix was taken a prisoner to Rome, where he was executed in 45 B.C., after adorning Caesar's triumphal procession.)

VII. CHARACTERS IN SELECTIONS PRESCRIBED

Orgetorix: A powerful Helvetian. He plotted to seize supreme power in his state, and instigated two other Gauls to join him in an effort to control all Gaul. The Helvetians attempted to bring him to trial, but Orgetorix probably committed suicide to escape condemnation.

Casticus: A Sequanian who joined Orgetorix in an attempt to control Gaul.

Dumnorix: A prominent, ambitious Haeduan. He hated the Romans, constantly opposed them, and was finally killed at Caesar's order.

Diviciacus: (1) An influential Haeduan, brother of Dumnorix, and friendly to Caesar. (2) A king of the Suessiones before Caesar came to Gaul.

Nammeius and **Verucloetius:** Envoys sent by the Helvetii to Caesar.

Titus Labienus: Caesar's chief lieutenant in the Gallic Wars. (He deserted Caesar, and fought most bitterly against him in the Civil War, in the last battle of which he was killed.)

Lucius Cassius: A Roman consul, defeated by the Helvetii before Caesar went to Gaul.

Lucius Aemilius: One of Caesar's Gallic cavalry officers.

Quintus Pedius: One of Caesar's lieutenants.

Iccius: A chief of the Remi, who was sent to Caesar as an envoy, and who acted as his friend during the Belgian campaign.

Andebrogius: A leader of the Remi, who accompanied Iccius as an envoy to Caesar.

Galba: King of the Suessiones.

Quintus Titurius Sabinus and **Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta:** Lieutenants of Caesar. They were slain by the Eburones.

Gaius Volusenus: One of Caesar's officers. He was sent to Britain in charge of a scouting expedition.

Commius: King of the Atrebates, friendly to Caesar. Sent to Britain by Caesar as an ambassador of good will, he was thrown into chains by the natives. Later he was returned to Caesar.

Publius Sulpicius Rufus: One of Caesar's lieutenants.

Qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat (*He who bore the eagle of the tenth legion*): The leader of the first Roman charge against the Britons.

Ambiorix: A chief of the Eburones. He led a revolt against Caesar, and successfully avoided capture.

Quintus Tullius Cicero: Brother of the great orator, Cicero. He was one of Caesar's lieutenants, and distinguished himself by resisting a siege of his camp.

Titus Pullo and **Lucius Vorenius:** Brave centurions, who won especial distinction at the siege of Cicero's camp.

Vertico: A Nervian noble, friendly to the Romans.

Ariovistus: A German king, defeated and driven from Gaul by Caesar.

Vercingetorix: An Arvernian chief, commander of the Gauls in their last great uprising against Caesar.

Eporedorix: (1) A noble of the Haedui, one of the leaders of the Gallic army sent to break Caesar's siege of Alesia. (2) A noble of the Haedui, captured by Caesar.

Viridomarus: A leader of the Haedui in the final Gallic rebellion.

Gaius Valerius Domnotaurus: A prominent Gallic citizen of the province, slain in battle.

Cotus and Cavarillus: Nobles of the Haedui, captured by Caesar.

Convictolitavis: A noble of the Haedui, whose claim to the chief magistracy of his state Caesar supported.

Litaviccus: A noble youth of the Haedui, whom Convictolitavis turned against Caesar.

VIII. RESULTS OF CAESAR'S GALLIC CAMPAIGNS

Caesar's wars in Gaul gave him a firm basis of prestige, party strength, military experience, and resources for the Civil War that was to result in his dictatorship.

Gaul itself was thoroughly civilized under the empire and became a chief seat of ancient culture. For hundreds of years it served as a "shock-absorber" and bulwark against invasions of barbarian Germans.

In later centuries Gaul was one of the leading countries that handed down to the modern world the legacies of the ancient world.

SUGGESTIONS FOR COLLATERAL READING

The following books have been selected from among those listed in the New York State Regents Syllabus in Latin.

Biography, History, and Social Life

- Abbott, F. F. History and description of Roman political institutions; 3d ed. 1911. Harvard Univ. Press
- Bailey, Cyril, *ed.* The legacy of Rome. Oxford. 1923.
- Boissier, Gaston. Cicero and his friends. Putnam. 1925.
- Brady, Lt. Col. S. G. Caesar's Gallic campaigns. The Military Service Publ. Co., Telegraph Press Bldg., Harrisburg, Pa. 1947.
- Breasted, J. H. Conquest of civilization; rev. ed. Harper. 1938.
- Carcopino, Jerome. Cicero; the secrets of his correspondence. 2v. Yale Univ. Press. 1951.
- Daily life in ancient Rome. Yale Univ. Press. 1940.
- Collingwood, R. G. Roman Britain; new ed. Oxford. 1932.
- Davis, W. S. Day in old Rome. Allyn. 1925.
- Duggan, Alfred. Julius Caesar. Knopf. 1955.
- Durant, Will. Caesar and Christ. Simon & Schuster. 1944.
- Ferrero, Guglielmo. The life of Julius Caesar. Putnam. 1933.
- Finley, M. J. The world of Odysseus. Viking. 1954.
- Foster, Genevieve. Augustus Caesar's world. Scribner. 1947.
- Geer, R. M. Classical civilization; Rome; 2d ed. Prentice-Hall. 1950.
- Halliburton, R. M. The glorious adventure. Grosset.
- Hamilton, Edith. Roman way. Norton. 1932.
- Haskell, H. J. New deal in old Rome. Knopf. 1947.
- This was Cicero. Knopf. 1942.
- Hayes, C. J. H. & Moon, P. T. Ancient and medieval history. Macmillan. 1929.
- Hill, Herbert. The Roman middle class in the republican period. Macmillan. 1952.
- Holmes, T. R. E. Caesar's conquest of Gaul; 2d rev. ed. Oxford. 1911.
- Katz, Solomon. Decline of Rome and the rise of medieval Europe. Cornell Univ. Press. 1955.
- Kieran, John, & Daley, Arthur. The story of the Olympic games. Lippincott. 1952.

- Lewis, Naphtali, & Reinhold, Meyer. *Roman civilization*. v. 1
The Republic. Columbia Univ. Press. 1955.
- Loane, H. J. *Industry and commerce of the city of Rome*. Johns Hopkins Press. 1938.
- Mills, Dorothy. *The book of the ancient Romans*. Putnam. 1927.
- Moore, F. G. *The Roman's world*. Columbia Univ. Press. 1936.
- National Geographic Magazine. *Everyday life in ancient times*. National Geographic Society. 1951.
- Pahlow, E. W. & Stearns, R. P. *Man's great adventure*; new rev. ed. Ginn. 1949.
- Quennell, Marjorie, & Quennell, C. H. B. *Everyday life in Roman Britain*. British Bk. Centre. 1925.
- Robinson, C. A. *Ancient history: from prehistoric times to the death of Justinian*. Macmillan. 1951.
- Robinson, J. H. & others. *History of civilization; earlier ages*. Ginn. 1937.
- Rostovtzeff, M. I. *Out of the past of Greece and Rome*. Yale Univ. Press. 1932.
- Rothery, A. E. *Rome today*. Dodd. 1950.
- Scullard, H. H. *Roman politics, 220-150 B. C.* Oxford Univ. Press, 1951.
- Showerman, Grant. *Eternal Rome*. Yale Univ. Press. 1925.
- *Rome and the Romans*. Macmillan. 1931.
- Starr, C. G., Jr. *The emergence of Rome as ruler of the western world*. Cornell Univ. Press. 1950.
- Stobart, J. C. *The grandeur that was Rome*; 3d ed. rev. British Bk. Centre.
- Tanzer, H. H. *Common people of Pompeii*. Johns Hopkins Press. 1939.
- Treble, H. A. & King, K. M. *Everyday life in Rome at the time of Caesar and Cicero*. Oxford Univ. Press. 1930.
- Walter, Gerard. *Caesar; a biography*. Scribner. 1952.
- Wolff, H. J. *Roman law*. Oklahoma Univ. Press. 1951.

Mythology and Legends

- Benson, Sally. *Stories of the gods and heroes*. Dial. 1940.
- Bulfinch, Thomas. *The age of fable*. Dutton.
- *Mythology*. Crowell. 1947.
- Church, A. J. *Aeneid for boys and girls*. Macmillan. 1948.
- *Iliad for boys and girls*. Macmillan. 1949.
- *Odyssey for boys and girls*. Macmillan.

- Colum, Padraic. *Children's Homer; adventures of Odysseus and the tale of Troy*. Macmillan.
- . *The golden fleece and the heroes who lived before Achilles*. Macmillan. 1921.
- Coolidge, O. E. *Greek myths*. Houghton. 1949.
- . *Trojan war*. Houghton. 1952.
- Gayley, C. M., *ed.* *Classical myths in English literature and art*; ed. rev. & enl. Ginn. 1939.
- Guerber, H. A. *Myths of Greece and Rome*. British Bk. Centre. 1921.
- Hamilton, Edith. *Mythology*. Little. 1942.
- Hawthorne, Nathaniel. *Wonder book and Tanglewood tales*. Houghton. 1923.
- Herzberg, M. J. *Classical myths*. Allyn. 1935.
- Kingsley, Charles. *Heroes: or, Greek fairy tales for my children*. Macmillan.
- Lowrey, J. S. *In the morning of the world*. Harper. 1944.
- Lum, Peter. *Stars in our heaven: myths and fables*. Pantheon. 1948.
- Norton, D. S. & Rushton, Peters. *Classical myths in English literature*. Rinehart. 1952.
- Price, M. E. *Myths and enchantment tales*. Rand. 1950.
- Sabin, F. E. *Classical myths that live today*; rev. & enl. ed. Silver. 1940.
- Strong, Jay, *ed.* *Treasury of the world's great myths and legends*. Hart. 1951.
- Tatlock, J. *Greek and Roman mythology*. Appleton. 1920.
- Warner, Rex. *Men and gods*. Farrar, Straus. 1951.

Fiction and Poetry with Classical Background

- Atherton, Gertrude. *Dido, queen of hearts*. Liveright. 1929.
- Baker, George. *Paris of Troy*. Penguin Books.
- Bryher, Winifred. *Roman wall*. Pantheon Books. 1954.
- Coles, Manning. *Great Caesar's ghost*. Doubleday. 1948.
- Costain, T. B. *The silver chalice*. Garden City. 1952.
- Davis, W. S. *A friend of Caesar*. Macmillan. 1925.
- DeWohl, Louis. *Living wood*. Lippincott. 1947.
- . *The spear*. Lippincott. 1955.
- Dolan, M. M. *Hannibal of Carthage*. Macmillan. 1955.
- Douglas, L. C. *The robe*. Houghton. 1942.
- Duggan, Alfred. *The little emperors*. Coward-McCann. 1953.
- Dunscomb, Charles. *Bond and the free*. Musson. 1955.

- Gale, Elizabeth. *Julia Valeria*. Putnam. 1951.
- Godwin, S. A. & Godwin, E. F. *Out of the strong*. Oxford. 1955.
- *Roman eagle*. Oxford. 1951.
- Graves, Ralph. *Lost eagles*. Knopf. 1955.
- Hawthorne, Nathaniel. *The marble faun*. Houghton.
- Ingles, J. W. *Test of valor*. Westminster. 1953.
- Kipling, Rudyard. *Puck of Pook's Hill*. Doubleday.
- Koestler, Arthur. *The gladiators*. Macmillan. 1939.
- Lawrence, Isabelle. *Gift of the golden cup*. Bobbs. 1946.
- *Theft of the golden ring*. Bobbs. 1948.
- Llewellyn, Richard. *The flame of Hercules*. Doubleday. 1955.
- Lytton, E. G. E. L. *Last days of Pompeii*. Dutton.
- Macaulay, T. B. *Lays of ancient Rome*. Cambridge Univ. Press.
- McLeish, Archibald. *The Trojan horse*, in *Collected Poems 1917-1952*. Houghton. 1952.
- Morley, Christopher. *The Trojan horse*. Lippincott. 1937.
- Powers, Alfred. *Hannibal's elephants*. Longmans. 1944.
- Schmitt, Gladys. *Confessors of the name*. Dial. 1952.
- Seton, Anya. *Mistletoe and sword*. Doubleday. 1955.
- Shakespeare, W. *Anthony and Cleopatra; Coriolanus; Julius Caesar*. Cambridge Univ. Press.
- Shore, Maxine. *Captive princess*. Longmans. 1952.
- Sienkiewicz, Henryk. *Quo vadis*. Little. 1943.
- Slaughter, F. G. *Road to Bithynia*. Doubleday. 1951.
- *The forgotten daughter*. Doubleday. 1933.
- Snedelker, C. D. *Luke's quest*. Doubleday. 1947.
- *Triumph for Flavius*. Lothrop. 1955.
- *White Isle*. Doubleday. 1940.
- Sutcliff, Rosemary. *Eagle of the Ninth*. Oxford. 1954.
- Trease, Geoffrey. *Web of traitors*. Vanguard. 1952.
- Treece, Henry. *Dark island*. Random House. 1953.
- Wallace, Lew. *Ben Hur*; special large-type ed. Harper.
- *The boy's Ben Hur*; abridged ed. Harper. 1928.
- White, E. L. *The unwilling Vestal*. Dutton. 1918.
- White, H. C. *Four rivers of Paradise*. Macmillan. 1955.
- Wilder, T. N. *Ides of March*. Harper. 1948.
- Williams, Jay. *Counterfeit African*. Oxford. 1944.
- *Roman moon mystery*. Oxford. 1948.
- Yourcenar, Marguerite. *Hadrian's memoirs*. Farrar, Straus. 1954.

QUESTIONS OF CONTEMPORARY INTEREST

1. Give several reasons why even our great modern highways are not as durable as the Roman roads.
2. State the term that would have been applied, in Caesar's army, to each of the following: "man-of-war" ship, artillery, banner, cavalry, infantry, auxiliaries, captain, quartermaster, colonel, van, rear guard.
3. After what two famous Romans are two of our months still named?
4. Name the countries that are now included within the former boundaries of the Roman Empire at its greatest extent (117 A.D.).
5. Name the modern *Romance* languages. Why are they so called?
6. State the present meaning, and explain the historical origin of each of the following words and expressions: *forum*; *rostrum*; *plebeian*; *patrician*; *client*; *Lucullan banquet*; *veto*; *Pyrrhic victory*; *All roads lead to Rome*; *arena*; *carrying the war into Africa*; *Carthage must be destroyed*; *crossing the Rubicon*; *I came, I saw, I conquered*; *Fabian policy*; *emperor*; *thou too, Brutus*?
7. Compare Julius Caesar's methods of dealing with the following problems with the methods employed by the present administration in the United States: unemployment; farm-relief; direct relief; concentration of wealth; economy in administration; taxes.
8. Compare the methods used by the Romans in their "winning of the West"—Northwest Africa, Spain, Gaul, etc.—with the methods used by the United States in the "winning of the West."
9. State the meaning of each of the following Latin words and expressions that are commonly used in modern English: *vice versa*, *nota bene*, *per se*, *gratis*, *bona fide*, *e pluribus unum*, *in statu quo*, *inter nos*, *modus operandi*, *post scriptum*, *alumni*, *Anno Domini*, *ante meridiem*, *post meridiem*, *ante mortem*, *post mortem*, *casus belli*, *mirabile dictu*, *sine die*, *habeas corpus*, *verbatim*, *per diem*, *alter ego*, *in medias res*, *memorandum*, *modus vivendi*, *versus*, *deo volente*, *finis*, *onus*, *lapsus linguae*, *fiat*.
10. Compare several chief amusements or games of today with several to which the Romans were devoted.

1

Caesar, postquam per *Ubiōs*¹ explōrātōrēs comperit *Suebōs*¹ sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus, quod, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, minimē hominēs Germānī agricultūrae student, cōstituit nōn prōgredi longius; sed nē omnīnō metum *reditūs*² suī barbaris tolleret, atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret, reductō exercitū, partem ultimam pontis in longitudinem pedum CC dēlēvit. In extrēmō ponte turrim *tabulātōrum*³ quattuor cōstituit praesidiumque cohortium XII pontis tuendī causā pōnit magnisque eum locum mūnitiōnibus firmat. Eī locō praesidiōque C. Volcācium Tullum adulēscentem praefēcit. Ipse profectus est per *Arduennam*⁴ silvam, quae est tōtius Galliae maxima. L. Minucium Basilum cum omnī equitatū praemittit.

CAESAR, *dē Bellō Gallicō*, VI, 29 (adapted)

¹ the name of a tribe.

³ stories

² return

⁴ the Ardennes

1. Whom did Caesar send ahead? With whom?
2. Comment on the size of the Ardennes.
3. Comment on the age of C. Volcacious Tullus. What was his task?
4. What did Caesar learn from scouts of the Ubii?
5. What did Caesar fear? Why should he have feared it? What did he decide to do?
6. How much of the bridge and what part of it did Caesar destroy? State *two* of his purposes in doing this.
7. What *three* defenses did Caesar place at the end of the bridge?

* This chapter was prepared by W. D. Pearson, Head of Latin Department, Milford School, Milford, Conn.

Magnus bellō Themistoclēs fuit neque mīnor in pāce. Cum enim portū neque magnō neque bonō Athēniēnsēs ūterentur, hūius cōsiliō *triplex*¹ *Piraei*² portus cōstitutus est tantisque mūrīs circumdatus, ut ipsam urbem dignitāte aequāret, *ūtilitāte*³ superāret. Idem mūrōs Athēniēnsium restituit suō periculō. Namque *Lacedaemoniū*⁴ causam idōneam nactī propter barbarōrum excursiōnes, quā negārent oportēre extrā *Peloponnēsū*⁵ ūllam urbem mūrōs habēre, nē essent loca mūnita, quae hostēs possidērent, Athēniēnsēs *aedificantēs*⁶ prohibēre sunt cōnātī. Athēniēnsēs enim duābus victōriis tantam glōriam apud omnēs gentēs erant cōsecūtī, ut intellexerent Lacedaemoniū dē prīcipātū sibi cum eis bellum futūrum esse. Itaque eōs quam infirmīssimōs esse volēbant.

NEPOS, *Themistoclēs*, VI (adapted)

¹ *triple*

² *the Piraeus*

³ Compare the adjective, *ūtilis*.

⁴ *the Spartans*

⁵ *the Peloponnesus*

⁶ Compare the noun, *aedificium*.

1. By what means had the Athenians won great glory?
2. Why did the Spartans really not wish the Athenians to be strong?
3. What reason did the Spartans give for trying to prevent the Athenians from building walls?
4. State *two* directions in which Themistocles was great.
5. What did the Athenians do at Themistocles' advice? Why? What was the result?
6. What words tell you that Themistocles risked his personal safety in fortifying Athens?

Cum Lābiēnus Caesaris cōpiās dēspiceret, Pompei cōnsilium summīs laudibus efferret, "*Nōlī*,"¹ inquit, "*existimāre*,"¹ Pompei hunc esse exercitum Caesaris, quī Galliam Germāniamque vicerit. Omnibus interfui proeliis, neque incognitam rem prōnūtiō *Perexigua*² pars illius exercitūs superest; magna pars periit, quod accidere tot proeliis fuit necesse, multōs *autumnī pestilentia*³ in Italiā cōsumpsit, multī domum discesserunt, multī sunt relictī in Italiā. Hae cōpiae, quās vidētis, ex *dilēctibus*⁴ *hōrum*⁵ annōrum in citeriōre Galliā sunt refectae, et plerique sunt ex colōniis *Trānspadānīs*. Ac tamen, quod fuit *rōboris*,⁷ duobus proeliis *Dyrrachī* interiiit.⁸ Haec cum dixisset, iūrāvit, sē nisi victōrem in castra nō reversūrum, reliquōsque, ut idem facerent, hortātus est.

CAESAR, *dē Bellō Cīvilī*, III, 87 (adapted)

¹ **Nōlī** existimāre = Do not suppose. ⁵ these recent

² The prefix, **per** = very.

³ autumn fever

⁴ levies

⁶ across the Po

⁷ strength

⁸ The nominative is **Dyrrachium** (a town).

1. Give a good title for the passage.
2. How did Labienus feel in general toward Pompey? Toward Caesar?
3. What did Labienus finally swear? What oath did the rest take?
4. To whom was the speech of Labienus directed? What word tells you this?
5. What was the main point of the speech of Labienus? Why did Labienus think he should be believed?
6. State *four* causes that, according to Labienus, had diminished Caesar's veteran army.
7. What did Labienus state as the chief source of Caesar's present army? Why, in Labienus' opinion, was even this army not as strong as it had been?

Simul atque Agēsilaus imperii potitus est, persuasit *Lacedaemoniis*¹ ut cum exercitū sē mitterent in Asiā bellumque *rēgi*² facerent, docēns *sati*³ esse in Asiā quam in Eurōpā dīmicārī. Namque fāma exierat *Artaxerxēs*⁴ comparāre classēs pedestrēsque exercitūs, quōs in Graeciam mitteret. Datā potestāte, tantā celeritāte ūsus est, ut prius in Asiā cum cōpiis pervēnerit quam *satrapae*⁵ eum scīrent profectum esse. Quō factum est ut omnēs imparātōs invenīret. Id ut cognōvit Tissaphernēs, quī summum imperium tum inter *praefectōs*⁶ rēgis habēbat, *indūtiās*⁷ ab Agēsilāo petivit; eāsque impetrāvit *trimēnstrēs*.⁸ Iūrāvit autem uterque sē sine *dolō*⁹ indūtiās cōservātūrum. In quā *pactiōne*¹⁰ summā fidē mānsit Agēsilāus; contrā ea Tissaphernēs nihil aliud quam bellum comparāvit.

NEPOS, *Agēsilaus*, II (adapted)

¹ *the Spartans*

² i.e. the king of Persia.

³ *better*

⁴ accusative of the name of the king of Persia—
nominative **Artaxerxēs**.

⁵ *satraps* (governors of Persian provinces).

⁶ *commanders*

⁷ *truce*

⁸ *for three months*

⁹ *trickery*

¹⁰ *agreement*

1. How did Agesilaus observe the truce? How did Tissaphernes observe it?
2. Who was Tissaphernes? What did he seek? In how far did he obtain his desire?
3. What did Agesilaus persuade the Spartans to do? When did he persuade them? What reason for his desire did he give?
4. What had Agesilaus heard Artaxerxes was doing? For what was Artaxerxes doing this?
5. When did Agesilaus arrive in Asia?
6. In what condition were the satraps upon the arrival of Agesilaus in Asia?

Erant apud Caesarem in equitum numero *duobus* Egus, duo filii, Raucillus et Egus, Abducellī filiī, quī principatum in civitate obtinuerat, *singulari*² virtute hominēs, quōrum operā Caesar omnibus Gallicis bellis optimā fortissimāque erat ūsus. Hīs domī ob hās causās amplissimōs magistrātūs mandāverat, atque eōs senātōrēs dēlēgerat, agrōsque in Galliā ex hostibus captōs praemiaque pecūniae magna tribuerat, *locuplētēsque*³ ex *egentibus*⁴ fēcerat. Hī propter virtutem nōn solum apud Caesarem in honore erant, sed etiam apud exercitum *cārī*⁵ habēbantur; sed *frētī*⁶ amicitia Caesaris et *stultī*⁷ ac barbarā arrogantia elātī, dēspiciēbant suōs stipendiumque equitum *fraudābant*⁸ et praedam omnem domum āvertēbant.

CAESAR, *dē Bellō Civi*, III. 59 (adapted)

¹ the name of a Gallic tribe.

² Compare the English word.

³ *wealthy*

⁴ from *egeō* = *need*.

⁵ *dear*

⁶ *relying*

⁷ *stupid*

⁸ *stole*

1. Why did Caesar honor Raucillus and Egus? What did the army think of them?
2. What *three* unworthy things did Raucillus and Egus do? How did the author explain these?
3. Of what tribe were Raucillus and Egus? Whose sons were they? What position had their father held?
4. State a number of ways in which Caesar showed his regard for Raucillus and Egus.

Caesar regionis equitatumque revocari atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiis litterisque cognōverat, *cōram*¹ perspicit, sic ut, āmissis circiter XL nāvibus, reliquae tamen reficī posse magnō negōtiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus *fabrōs*² dēligit et ex *continentī*³ aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scribit ut quam plūrimās possit eis legiōnibus, quae sint apud eum, nāvēs instituat. Ipse, etsi rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs *subdūcī*⁴ et cum castris ūnā mūnitiōne coniungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs decem cōnsūmit, nē nocturnīs quidem temporibus ad labōrem militum intermissis. Subductis nāvibus castrisque ēgregiē mūnitiis, eāsdem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit; ipse *eōdem*⁵ unde redierat proficiscitur.

CAESAR, *dē Bellō Gallicō*, V, 11

¹ *in person*

² *workmen*

³ *the mainland*

⁴ *to be drawn up on land*

⁵ *an adverb.*

1. What order did Caesar give in regard to the legions and cavalry? What did Caesar himself do then?
2. State exactly what Caesar saw had happened to his fleet. How had he previously heard about this?
3. State *two* sources from which Caesar obtained workmen.
4. What was Caesar's message to Labienus?
5. What decision did Caesar make in regard to the fleet? Was it difficult or easy to carry this out? Support your opinion.
6. How long did it take to carry out Caesar's decision? Why was it possible to do this in such a short time?
7. What *two* things did Caesar do after he had accomplished the task he had set for himself?

Primum Cīmōn imperātor apud flūmen *Strȳmona*¹ magnās copīās *Thraecum*² vīcit, oppidum *Amphipolīm*³ cōstituit eōque decem milia Athēniēnsium in colōniam mīsīt. Idem rūsus imperātor Cypriōrum et Phoenīcum *ducentārum*⁴ nāvium classem cēpit eōdemque diē parī fōrtūnā in terrā ūsus est. Namque hostium nāvibus captīs statim ex classe cōpīās suās ēdūxit barbarōrumque māximam vim ūnō impetū reppulit. Quā victōriā magna praedā potītus, cum domum reverterētur, quod iam nōnnūllae īnsulae propter *acerbitātem*⁵ imperiī dēfēcerant, bene *animātās*⁶ cōnfirmāvit, *aliēnātās*⁷ ad officiū redīre coēgit. *Scȳrum*,⁸ quam eō tempore Dolopes incolēbant, quod male sē gesserant, vacuēfēcit, possessōrēs veterēs urbe īsulāque ēiēcit, agrōs civibus dīvīsīt.

NEPOS, *Cīmōn*, II (adapted)

¹ accusative of **Strȳmōn**.

² genitive plural.

³ accusative of **Amphipolis**.

⁴ *two hundred*

⁵ *severity*

⁶ perfect participle of a verb allied with **animus**.

⁷ Compare the adjective, **aliēnus**.

⁸ **Scȳrus**, an island.

1. What did Cimon do to Scyrus? Why? Who lived there?
2. State *three* things that Cimon did among the Thracians.
3. Over whom did Cimon win a naval victory? How great a victory was it? Why was the day of this victory especially remarkable?
4. State precisely what Cimon did after he captured the enemy's fleet.
5. What did Cimon win by his victory over the barbarians (Persians)? For what place did he set out?
6. What had some islands done? Why? State *two* methods pursued by Cimon in dealing with the islands.

Caesar *infirmitatem*¹ Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capiendīs *mōbilēs*² et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit. Est enim hōc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis, ut et *viātōrēs*³ etiam invītōs cōsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit, quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint, prōnūtiāre cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque *auditiōnibus*⁴ permōtī, dē summīs sacpe rēbus cōsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in *restigiō*⁵ *paenitēre*⁶ necesse est, cum incertīs rēmōribus *scrvant*,⁷ et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum *fīcta*⁸ respondeant. Quā cōsuētūdine cognitā, Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, *mātūrius*⁹ quam cōsuērat ad exercitum proficīscitur.

CAESAR, *dē Bellō Gallicō*, IV, 5–6 (adapted)

¹ *fickleness*

² *changeable*

³ *travelers*

⁴ *hearsay*

⁵ *on the spot*

⁶ *repent*

⁷ *pay heed*

⁸ *lies*

⁹ *earlier*

1. What did Caesar fear? Why did he fear it? What did he think?
2. State exactly how travelers and merchants were connected with a Gallic custom.
3. What can you gather from the passage about the importance the Gauls attached to the tales of travelers and merchants?
4. For what *two* reasons were the Gauls often sorry they had adopted new plans?
5. When did Caesar leave for the army? For what purpose?

Equitēs nostrum essedāriique¹ ācriter proeliō cum equitatū nostrō in itinere cōflīxērunt, ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectīs cupidius īsecūtī nōnnūllōs ex suis āmisērunt. At illī intermissō spatiō, imprudentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūnitiōne² castrōrum subitō sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt, impetūque in eōs factō quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs conlocātī ācriter pugnāvērunt, duābusque missīs subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, atque hīs primīs legiōnum duārum, cum eae perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōstitissent, novō genere pugnae perterritīs nostrīs per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus mīlitum, interficitur. Illī, plūribus submissīs cohortibus, repelluntur.

CAESAR, *dē Bellō Gallicō*, V, 15

¹ *charioteers*

² Compare the verb, *mūniō*.

1. Who was killed in the engagements described above?
2. What finally happened to the enemy?
3. Against whom did the Romans (*nostrī*) fight? To what extent were they successful at first?
4. What mistake did the Romans make? What happened because of this?
5. How did the enemy try to outwit the Romans? What aid did Caesar send?
6. What frightened the Romans?

*Partitō*¹ exercitū, Caesar T. Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus ad Ōceanum in eās partēs quae *Menapiōs*² attingunt proficiscī iubet; C. Trebōnium cum parī legiōnum numerō ad eam regiōnem quae *Atuatucīs*² *adiacet*³ populandam mittit; ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flūmen *Sabin*,⁴ quod influit in *Mosam*,⁵ extrēmāsque *Arduennae*⁶ partēs ire cōstituit, quō cum paucīs equitibus profectum *Ambiorigem*⁷ audiēbat. *Discēdēns*⁸ post diem septimum sēsē reversūrum cōfirmat, quam ad diem eī legiōnī quae in praesidiō relinquiēbātur frūmentum dēbērī sciēbat. Labiēnum Trebōniumque hortātur, sī rei pūblīcae *commodō*⁹ facere possint, ad eam diem revertantur, ut rūsus comunicātō cōsiliō explorātisque hostium ratiōnibus aliud initium bellī capere possint.

CAESAR, *dē Bellō Gallicō*, VI, 33 (adapted)

¹ from *partior*, *divide*. The perfect participle of this verb may be used passively.

² the name of a tribe.

³ *lies next*

⁴ *Sabis*, the name of a river.

⁵ the name of a river.

⁶ the name of a forest.

⁷ a Gallic chief.

⁸ *departing*

⁹ *with profit*

1. State Caesar's instructions to T. Labienus.
2. What was C. Trebonius to do? How many legions did he take with him?
3. Where did Caesar decide to go? With how many legions?
4. What report had reached Caesar about Ambiorix?
5. When did Caesar state he would return? Why?
6. When were Labienus and Trebonius to return? On what condition?
7. What did Caesar plan to do after the return of Labienus and Trebonius?

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

able (be)	<i>possum, posse, potuī</i>
absent (be)	<i>absum, -esse, āfuī, āfulūrus.</i>
accept	<i>accipio, 3 -cēpī, -ceplus.</i>
accomplish	<i>perficiō, 3, fecī, fectus; consequor, ī, secūtus.</i>
account, on	
account of	<i>propter (with acc.)</i>
accordingly	<i>itaque.</i>
across	<i>trāns (with acc.)</i>
advance	<i>prōgredior, ī, gressus.</i>
afraid,	
be afraid	<i>timeō, 2, -uī.</i>
Africa	<i>Africa, -ae (f.).</i>
after	<i>post (prep. with acc.); postquam (conj.)</i>
afterward	<i>postea.</i>
against	<i>in, ad, contrā (prepos. with acc.).</i>
aid (verb)	<i>iuvō, 1, iūvi, iūtus.</i>
aid (noun)	<i>auxilium, -ī, n.; subsidium, -ī, n.</i>
alarm	<i>permoveō, 2, mōvī, mōtus; perturbō 1.</i>
Alexandria	<i>Alexandria, -ae (f.)</i>
all	<i>omnis, -e</i>
ally	<i>socius, -ī, m.</i>
already	<i>iam.</i>
although	<i>cum.</i>
always	<i>semper.</i>
ambassador	<i>lēgātus, -ī (m.).</i>
among	<i>apud, inter, (prepos. with acc.)</i>
and	<i>et, atque, -que</i>
announce	<i>nūntiō, 1.</i>
another	<i>alius, -a, -ud.</i>

answer	<i>respondeō, 2, -spondī, -spōnsus.</i>
any (adj.)	<i>ullus, -a, -um.</i>
appoint	<i>cōstituō, 3; -uī, -ūtus.</i>
approach	<i>appropinquō, 1.</i>
Ariovistus,	<i>Ariovistus, -ī (m.).</i>
arms	<i>arma, -ōrum (n.).</i>
army	<i>exercitus, -ūs (m.).</i>
arrival	<i>adventus, -ūs (m.).</i>
arrive	<i>perveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventūrus.</i>
ask	<i>rogō, 1; petō, 3, -ivī, -itus; quaerō, 3, -sivī. -sītus.</i>
assault	
(noun)	<i>oppugnātiō, -ōnis (f.).</i>
at	<i>ad (with acc.) in (with abl.)</i>
attack (verb)	<i>oppugnō, 1; aggredior, -ī, -gressus; impelum faciō.</i>
attack (noun)	<i>impetus, -ūs (m.).</i>
attempt	<i>cōnor, 1, cōnātus.</i>
auxiliaries	<i>auxilia, -ōrum (n.).</i>
await	<i>expectō, 1.</i>
away,	
be away	<i>absum, abesse, āfuī, āfulūrus.</i>
B	
baggage	<i>impedimenta, -ōrum (n. plu.).</i>
bank	<i>rīpa, -ae (f.).</i>
barbarian	<i>barbarus, -ī (m.).</i>
battle	<i>proelium, -ī (n.); pugna, -ae (f.).</i>
be	<i>sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.</i>
be distant	<i>absum, -esse, āfuī, āfulūrus.</i>

because	<i>quod: because of, propter (with acc.)</i>
become	<i>fiō, fieri, factus.</i>
before (adv.)	<i>ante, antea,</i>
before (conj.)	<i>priusquam, antequam.</i>
before (prep.)	<i>ante (with acc.); pro (with abl.).</i>
beg	<i>orō, 1; obsecrō, 1.</i>
began	<i>coepi, coepisse, coepius.</i>
begin	<i>incipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptus.</i>
Belgians	<i>Belgae, -ārum (m.).</i>
Bellovaci	<i>Bellovacī, -ōrum (m.).</i>
besiege	<i>obsideō, 2, -sēdi, -sessus.</i>
boat	<i>linter, -tris (f.).</i>
Boii	<i>Boiī, -ōrum (m.).</i>
both . . and	<i>et . . et.</i>
brave	<i>fortis, -e.</i>
bravely	<i>fortiter.</i>
bravery	<i>fortitūdō, -inis (f.).</i>
bridge	<i>pōns, pontis (m.).</i>
bring	<i>ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; addūco, 3, -dūxī, ductus.</i>
bring forward	<i>agō, 3, ēgī, āctus.</i>
bring together	<i>comportō, 1; addūco, 3, -dūxī, ductus.</i>
Britain	<i>Britannia, -ae (f.).</i>
broad	<i>lātus, -a, -um.</i>
brother	<i>frāter, frātris (m.).</i>
Brundisium	<i>Brundisium, -ī (n.).</i>
Brutus	<i>Brūtus, -ī (m.).</i>
build	<i>aedificō, 1; mūniō, 4, -vī, -īlus; faciō, 3, fecī, factus.</i>
but	<i>sed, at.</i>
by	<i>ā, ab (abl. of agent).</i>

Caesar	<i>Caesar, -aris (m.).</i>
call	<i>vocō, 1.</i>
camp	<i>castra, -ōrum (n.).</i>
can	<i>possum, posse, potuī.</i>
capture	<i>capiō, 3, cēpi, captus; expugno, 1.</i>
cavalry	<i>equitātus, -ūs (m.); equitēs, -um (m.).</i>
chief	<i>princeps, -cipis (m.).</i>
choose	<i>deligō, 3, legī, -lectus.</i>
city	<i>urbs, urbis (f.).</i>
coast	<i>ōra, -ae (f.).</i>
cohort	<i>cohors, -hortis (f.).</i>
collect	<i>cōgō, 3, -ēgī, -āctus; cōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus.</i>
come	<i>veniō, 4, vēnī, ventūrus.</i>
coming	<i>adventus, ūs (m.).</i>
command (verb)	<i>imperō, 1; iubeō, 2, iussī, iussus.</i>
command (noun)	<i>imperātum, -ī (n.).</i>
command, be in command	<i>praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.</i>
commander	<i>imperātor, -ōris (m.).</i>
Commius	<i>Commius, -ī (m.).</i>
compel	<i>cōgō, 3, -ēgī, -āctus.</i>
complain	<i>queror, -ī, questus.</i>
complete	<i>faciō, 3, fecī, jactus.</i>
confederacy	<i>foedus, -eris (n.).</i>
confer	<i>colloquor, -loquī, locutus.</i>
conference	<i>colloquium, -ī (n.).</i>
conquer	<i>superō, 1; vincō, 3, vicī, victus.</i>
conspiracy	<i>coniūratiō, -ōnis (f.).</i>
consul	<i>cōsul, -ulis (m.).</i>
council	<i>concilium, -ī (n.).</i>
country	<i>patria, -ae (f.).</i>
courage	<i>virtūs, -utis (f.); animus, -ī (m.).</i>

Crassus	<i>Crassus</i> , -ī (m.).
cross	<i>trānseō</i> , <i>trē</i> , -ī, -ītus; <i>trānsgredior</i> , -ī, -gressus.
D	
daily	<i>cotidiānus</i> , -a, -um.
danger	<i>periculum</i> , -ī (n.).
dare	<i>audeō</i> , -ēre, ausus.
daring	<i>audācia</i> , -ae (f.).
dawn	<i>prima lūx</i> , <i>prīmae lūcis</i> .
dawn (at)	<i>primā lūce</i> .
day	<i>diēs</i> , -ēī (m.).
daybreak	<i>prima</i> (ae), <i>lūx</i> (<i>lūcis</i>).
decide	<i>cōstituō</i> , 3, -uī, -ūtus.
deep	<i>allus</i> , -a, -um.
defeat	<i>superō</i> , 1.
defend	<i>dēfendō</i> , 3, -dī, -sus.
defender	<i>dēfēnsor</i> , <i>ōris</i> (m.).
delay	<i>moror</i> , 1, -ātus.
demand	<i>imperō</i> , 1; <i>postulō</i> , 1.
depart	<i>discēdō</i> , 2, -cessī, -cessūrus.
depth	<i>altitūdō</i> , -inis (f.).
desert	<i>dēsērō</i> , 3, -serū, -serlus.
desire	<i>cupiō</i> , 3, -ivī, -ītus.
despair of	<i>dēspērō</i> , 1 (<i>dē</i> with abl.).
determine	<i>cōstituō</i> , 3, -uī, -ūtus; <i>statuō</i> , 3, -uī, -ūtus.
difficult	<i>difficilis</i> -e.
direction	<i>pars</i> , <i>partis</i> (f.).
distant (be)	<i>absum</i> , -esse, <i>āfuī</i> , <i>āfūlūrus</i> .
ditch	<i>fossa</i> , -ae (f.).
do	<i>faciō</i> , 3, <i>fēcī</i> , <i>factus</i> .
be done	
(go on)	<i>geror</i> , <i>gerī</i> , <i>gestus</i> .
doubt	<i>dubitō</i> , 1.
draw up	<i>īnstruō</i> , 3, -strūxī, -strūctus.
drive	<i>pellō</i> , 3, <i>pepulī</i> , <i>pulsus</i> .
drive back	<i>repellō</i> , 3, <i>reppulī</i> , <i>repulsus</i> .
Dumnorix	<i>Dumnorīx</i> , -īgis (m.).

E

eager	<i>cupidus</i> , -a, -um.
early	<i>māne</i> .
easily	<i>facile</i> .
easy	<i>facilis</i> , -e.
else	<i>reliquus</i> , -a, -um.
nothing	
else	<i>nihil aliud</i> .
encourage	<i>hortor</i> , -ārī, -ātus; <i>cohortor</i> , 1.
enemy	<i>hostis</i> , -is (m.); <i>hostēs</i> , -um (m.).
enough	<i>satis</i> .
envoy	<i>lēgātus</i> , -ī (m.).
everything	<i>omnia</i> , <i>omnēs rēs</i> .

F

far	<i>longē</i> .
farm	<i>ager</i> , <i>agrī</i> (m.).
fear (verb)	<i>timeō</i> , 2, <i>tīmā</i> ; <i>vereor</i> , <i>verērī</i> , <i>verētus</i> .
fertility	<i>bonitās</i> , -tātis (f.).
few	<i>paucī</i> , -ae, -a.
field	<i>ager</i> , <i>agrī</i> (m.).
fiercely	<i>ācriter</i> .
fight (verb)	<i>pugnō</i> , 1; <i>contendō</i> , 3, -lentī, -tentus.
fight (noun)	<i>pugna</i> , -ae (f.); <i>proelium</i> , 4 (n.).
find	<i>inveniō</i> , 4, -vēmī, -ventus; <i>nancīscor</i> , -ī, <i>naclus</i> .
find out	<i>reperiō</i> , 4, <i>repperī</i> , <i>reperlus</i> .
five	<i>quīnque</i> .
flee	<i>fugiō</i> , 3, <i>fūgā</i> , <i>fugitūrus</i>
fleet	<i>classis</i> , -is (f.).
flight	<i>fuga</i> , -ae (f.).
put to	
flight	<i>in fugam dō</i> , <i>dare</i> , <i>dedī</i> , <i>datus</i> .
foe	<i>hostis</i> , -is (m.).
follow	<i>sequor</i> , <i>sequī</i> , <i>secūtus</i> .
following	<i>posterus</i> , -a, -um.
food	<i>cibus</i> , -ī (m.).

foot	<i>pēs, pedis</i> (m.).
foot soldier	<i>pedes, peditis</i> (m.).
for (in be- half of)	<i>prō</i> (with abl.).
forced march	<i>magnum iter</i> .
forces	<i>cōpiae, -ārum</i> (f.).
ford	<i>vadum, -ī</i> (n.).
form (draw up)	<i>instruō, 3, -strūxī, -strūctus</i> .
form (a plan)	<i>inēō, -īre, -īī, -ītus</i> .
fortified	<i>mūnītus, -a, -um</i> .
fortify	<i>mūniō, 4, -īvī, -ītus</i> .
fourth	<i>quārtus, -a, -um</i> .
friend	<i>amicus, -ī</i> (m.).
friendship	<i>amicitia, -ae</i> (f.).
from	<i>ā, ab, dē, ē, ex</i> (prepos. with abl.); (conj.); <i>quominus</i> .
furnish	<i>praebeō, 2, -uī, -ītus</i> .

G

gate	<i>porta, -ae</i> (f.).
Gaul (the country)	<i>Gallia, -ae</i> (f.).
a Gaul	<i>Gallus, -ī</i> (m.).
general	<i>dux, ducis</i> (m.); <i>imperator, -ōris</i> (m.).
Geneva	<i>Genava, -ae</i> (f.).
Germans	<i>Germānī, -ōrum</i> (m.).
get posses- sion of	<i>occupō, 1; potior, -īrī, -ītus</i> .
give	<i>dō, dare, dedī, datus</i> .
give back	<i>reddō, 3, -didī, -dītus</i> .
give up	<i>dēdō, 3, dēdidī, dēdītus</i> .
go	<i>eō, īre, īī, itūrus</i> .
go off	<i>abeō, -īre, -īī, -itūrus</i> .
go on	<i>geror, gerī, gestus</i> .
go out	<i>exeō, -īre, -īī, -ītus</i> .
good	<i>bonus, -a, -um</i> .
grain	<i>frūmentum, -ī</i> (n.).
great	<i>magnus, -a, -um</i> .
guard	<i>praesidium, -ī</i> (n.).

H

Haedui	<i>Haeduī, -ōrum</i> (m.).
halt	<i>cōnsistō, 3, -stitī</i> .
happen	<i>accidō, 3, -cidī; fiō, fierī, factus</i> .
harbor	<i>portus, -ūs, (m.)</i> .
Harudes	<i>Harūdēs, -um</i> (m.).
haste, in great haste	<i>celeriter</i> .
hasten	<i>contendō, 3, -tendī, -tentus; properō, 1; mātūrō, 1</i> .
have	<i>habeō, 2, -uī, -ītus</i> .
he	<i>is, ille</i> .
hear	<i>audiō, 4, -īvī, -ītus</i> .
Helvetians	<i>Helvētīī, -ōrum</i> (m.).
hill	<i>collis, -is</i> (m.).
himself	<i>ipse, -a, -um</i> .
his (reflexive)	<i>suus, -a, -um;</i> (not reflexive), <i>eius</i> .
hold	<i>teneō, 2, -uī; obtineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentus</i> .
home	<i>domus, -ūs</i> (f.).
at home	<i>domī</i> .
home (to- wards)	<i>domum</i> .
hope (verb)	<i>spērō, 1</i> .
hope (noun)	<i>spēs, -eī</i> (f.).
horseman	<i>eques, -itis</i> (m.).
hostage	<i>obses, -idis</i> (c.).
hour	<i>hōra, -ae</i> (f.).
how large	<i>quantus, -a, -um</i> .
hurl	<i>coniciō, 3, -ieci, -iectus</i> .
hurry	<i>contendō, 3, -tendī, -tentus</i> .

I

I	<i>ego</i> .
if	<i>sī; if not, nisi</i> .
immediately	<i>statim; prōtinus</i> .
in	<i>in</i> (with abl.).
in order that	<i>ut</i> .
in order that not	<i>nē</i> .

in order that	<i>nē quid.</i>
nothing	
inform	<i>certiorem (-ēs) faciō, 3, fēcī, factus.</i>
inquire	<i>quaerō, 3, -sīvī, -sītus.</i>
in regard to	<i>dē (with abl.).</i>
instruction	<i>mandātum, -ī (n.).</i>
into	<i>in (with acc.).</i>
its (reflexive)	<i>suus, -a, -um;</i> (not reflexive), <i>eius.</i>

J

join battle	<i>proelium committō, 3, -mīsī, -missus.</i>
--------------------	--

K

kill	<i>interficiō, 3, -fēcī, fectus; necō, 1; occidō, 3, -cīdī, -cīsus.</i>
king	<i>rēx, rēgis (m.).</i>
know	<i>sciō, 4, scīvī, scītus; intellegō, 3, -lēxī, lēctus.</i>

L

Labienus	<i>Labiēnus, -ī (m.).</i>
land (verb)	<i>ēgredior, -ī, -gressus.</i>
land (noun)	<i>ager, agrī (m.); terra, -ae (f.).</i>
large	<i>magnus, -a, -um.</i>
lead	<i>dūcō, 3, dūxī, ductus.</i>
lead back	<i>redūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus.</i>
lead over	<i>trādūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus.</i>
leader	<i>dux, ducis (m.).</i>
learn	<i>cognōscō, 3, -gnōvī, -gnīlus; intellegō, 3, -lēxī, -lēctus; reperīō, 4, repperī, reperlus.</i>
leave	<i>relinquō, 3, liquī, -lictus.</i>
left	<i>sinister, -tra, -trum.</i>
legate	<i>lēgātus, -ī (m.).</i>
legion	<i>legiō, -ōnis (f.).</i>

letter (of alphabet)	<i>littera, -ae (f.); (epistle), litterae, -arum (f.); epistula, -ae (f.).</i>
liberty	<i>libertās, -ātis (f.).</i>
lieutenant	<i>lēgātus, -ī (m.).</i>
line of battle	<i>aciēs, -ēī (f.).</i>
Lingones	<i>Lingonēs, -um (m.).</i>
listen to	<i>audiō, 4, -īvī, -ītus.</i>
loyal	<i>fidēlis, -e.</i>

M

machine	<i>māchinātiō, -ōnis (f.).</i>
make	<i>faciō, 3, fēcī, factus.</i>
make a march	<i>iler faciō, 3, fēcī, factus.</i>
make preparation	<i>comparō, 1.</i>
make use of	<i>ūtor, -ī, ūsus.</i>
make war	<i>bellum faciō; bellum inferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus.</i>
man	<i>homō, hominis (c.); vir, -ī (m.).</i>
many	<i>multī, -ae, -a.</i>
march (noun)	<i>iler, itineris (n.).</i>
march (verb)	<i>iler faciō.</i>
marsh	<i>palūs, -ūdis (f.).</i>
message	<i>nūntius, -ī (m.).</i>
messenger	<i>nūntius, -ī (m.).</i>
Metius	<i>Metius, -ī (m.).</i>
midst (of)	<i>medius, -a, -um.</i>
might	<i>vīs (f.).</i>
mile	<i>mille passūs.</i>
miles	<i>mīlia passuum.</i>
Mithridates	<i>Mithridātēs, is (m.).</i>
moon	<i>lūna, -ae (f.).</i>
mound	<i>tumulus, -ī (m.).</i>
more	<i>plūs, plūris.</i>
mountain	<i>mōns, montis (m.).</i>
move	<i>moveō, 2, mōvī, mōtus.</i>
much	<i>multus, -a, -um;</i>
by much	<i>multō.</i>

multitude *multitūdō, -inīs (f.).*
my *meus, -a, -um.*

N

nation *nātiō, -ōnis (f.).*
near *propinquus, -a, -um.*
very near *proximus, -a, -um.*
neglect *neglegō, 3, -lēxi, -lēctus;*
omittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus.

neighbor *finitimus, -ī (m.).*
neighboring *finitimus, -a, -um.*
Nervii *Nerviī, -ōrum (m.).*
nevertheless *tamen.*
new *novus, -a, -um.*
news *nūntius, -ī (m.).*
next *proximus, -a, -um.*

on the
next day *posterō diē.*
night *nox, noctis (f.).*
no longer *nōn iam.*
no one *nēmō.*
not *nōn.*
noted *cognitus, -a, -um.*
nothing *nihil.*
now *nunc.*
number *numerus, -ī (m.).*

O

obtain *obtinēō, 2, -tinuī, -lentus.*
Octavius *Octāviūs, -ī (m.).*
old *vetus, -eris.*
on *in (with abl.).*
on account of *ob, propter (prepos. with acc.).*
once,
at once *statim.*
one *unus, -a, -um.*
only one *sōlus, -a, -um.*
order *imperō, 1; iubeō, 2, iussī, iussus.*
Orgetorix *Orgeloriūx, -īgis (m.).*

other *alius, -a, -ud; the other (of two), alter, -a, -um; the other (the rest), reliquus, -a, -um.*

ought *dēbeō, 2, -uī, -itus; oportet, tēre, -tuit.*

our *noster, -tra, -trum.*

out from *ē or ex (with abl.).*

outside *extrā (with acc.).*

P

part *pars, partis (f.).*

peace *pāx, pācis (f.).*

persuade *persuādeō, 2, -suāsī, suāsum.*

permit *permittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus; patior, -ī, passus.*

pillage *praedor, -ārī, -ātus; diripiō, 3, -rīpui, -reptus.*

people *populus, -ī (m.).*

pitch camp *castra pōnō, 3, posuī, positus.*

place *locus, -ī (m.).*

place in charge of *praeficiō, 3, -fēcī, fectus.*

plan *cōsiliūm, -ī (n.).*

powerful, be
powerful *valeō, 2, -uī, -itūrus.*

be most
powerful *plūrimūm valeō, plūrimūm possum.*

prevent *prohibeō, 2, -uī, -itus.*

Procillus *Procillus, -ī (m.).*

promise *polliceor, -ērī, -itus.*

province *prōvincia, -ae (f.).*

put *pōnō, 3, posuī, positus.*

put at the head of *praeficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus.*

put to flight *fugō, 1.*

Q

quickly *celeriter*.
as quickly
as possible *quam celerrimē*.

R

reach *pervenīō, 4, -vērī, -ventum*.
ready *parātus, -a, -um*.
reason *causa, -ae (f.)*.
for this
reason *quā dē causā*.
recall *revocō, 1*.
receive *accipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus*.
refrain *abstineō, 2, -tīnuī, -lentus*.
regard, in
regard to *dē (with abl.)*.
remain *maneō, 2, mānsī, mānsūrus*.
Remi *Rēmī, -ōrum (m.)*.
reply *respondeō, 2, -spondī, -spōnsus*.
report (verb) *nūntiō, 1*.
report (noun) *fāma, -ae (f.)*.
resist *resistō, 3, -stitī*.
rest of *reliquus, -a, -um*.
retreat *mē recipiō, 3, -cēpī, -cēptus*.
return *redeō, -īre, -ī, -itum; revertor, -ī, reversus*.
reward *praemium, -ī (n.)*.
Rhine *Rhēnus, -ī (m.)*.
river *flūmen, -inis (n.)*.
road *via, -ae (f.); iter, itineris (n.)*.
Roman (adj.) *Rōmānus, -a, -um*.
Romans *Rōmānī, -ōrum (m.)*.
Rome *Rōma, -ae (f.)*.
route *via, -ae (f.); iter, itineris (n.)*.
run *currō, 3, cucurrī, cursus*.

S

safety *salūs, -ūtis (f.)*.
sail *nāvigō, 1*.
same *īdem, eadem, idem*.
say *dicō, 3, dixī, dictus*.
scout *explōrātor, -ōris (m.); speculātor, -ōris (m.)*.
see *videō, 2, -vidī, vīsus*.
seek *petō, 3, -ivī, -itus*.
seem *videor, -ērī, vīsus*.
seize *occupō, 1, comprehendō, 3, -hendī, -hēnsus*.
senate *senātus, -ūs (m.)*.
senator *senātor -ōris (m.)*.
send *mittō, 3, mīsī, missus*.
send ahead *praemittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus*.
Senones *Senonēs, -um (m.)*.
Sequani *Sēquanī, -ōrum (m.)*.
set forth,
set out *proficīscor, -ī, -fectus*.
seven *septem*.
ship *nāvis -is (f.)*.
short *brevīs, -e*.
signal *signum, -ī (n.)*.
since *cum*.
slay *occidō, 3, -cidī, -cīsus*.
slowly *tardē*.
small *parvus, -a, -um*.
so (with verbs) *ita, sic; (with adj. and adv.), tam*.
so great *tantus, -a, -um*.
soldier *mīles, -itis (m.)*.
some *aliquī, -quae, -qua; nōnnullī, -ae, -a*.
son *filius, -ī (m.)*.
Sontiates *Sontiatēs, -um (m.)*.
soon *mox*.
soon, as
soon as *simul atque*.
as soon as possible *quam primum*.
spare *parcō, 3, peperci, parsūrus*.

speech	<i>orātiō, -ōnis</i> (f.).
speed	<i>celeritās, -ātis</i> (f.).
spot	<i>locus, -ī</i> (m.).
spring	<i>vēr, vērīs</i> (n.).
state	<i>civilās, -ātis</i> (f.).
station	<i>cōstitutō, 3, -stitui,</i> <i>-stitūtus; pōnō, 3,</i> <i>posuī, positus;</i> <i>collocō, 1.</i>
stay	<i>maneo, 2, mānsī,</i> <i>mānsūrus.</i>
stone	<i>lapis, -idis</i> (m.).
strong, be	
strong	<i>valeō, 2, -uī, -itūrus.</i>
strongly	
fortified	<i>commūnitus, -a, -um.</i>
Suebi	<i>Suebī, -ōrum</i> (m.).
suitable	<i>idōneus, -a, -um.</i>
summer	<i>aestās, -ātis</i> (f.).
sunset	<i>sōlis occāsus, -ūs</i> (m.).
supply	<i>praebeō, 2, -buī, -bitus.</i>
supply	<i>rēs frāmentāria, rēi</i> <i>frūmentārae;</i> <i>commeātus, -ūs</i> (m.).
surrender	<i>dēdō, 3, dēdidī,</i> <i>dēditus.</i>
surround	<i>circumdō, 1, -dedī,</i> <i>-datus.</i>
swiftly	<i>celeriter.</i>
swiftness	<i>celeritās, -ātis</i> (f.).
Syria	<i>Syria, -ae</i> (f.).

T

take	<i>capio, 3, cēpī, captus</i>
take by	
assault	<i>expugnō, 1.</i>
take posses-	
sion of	<i>potior, -iōrī, -itius.</i>
tell	<i>dīcō, 3, dīxī, dictus.</i>
ten	<i>decem.</i>
terrify	<i>perterreō, 2, -uī, -itus.</i>
territory	<i>fīnēs, -ium</i> (m.).
than	<i>quam.</i>

thanks	<i>grātiaē, -ārum</i> (f.).
give	
thanks	<i>grātiās agō, 3, -ēgī,</i> <i>actus.</i>
that (conj.)	<i>ut;</i> (with comparatives) <i>quō;</i> (with verbs of fearing) <i>nē.</i>
that not	<i>nē; ut nōn.</i>
that (dem.	
pro.)	<i>is, ea, id; ille, -a, -ud.</i>
that (rel.	
pro.)	<i>quī, quae, quod.</i>
their (reflex-	
ive)	<i>suus, -a, -um; (not</i> reflexive) <i>eōrum.</i>
there	<i>ibi.</i>
there is	<i>est.</i>
there was	<i>erat.</i>
thing	<i>rēs, rēi</i> (f.).
think	<i>putō, 1; existimō, 1;</i> <i>arbitror, -ārī, -ātus.</i>
third	<i>tertius, -a, -um.</i>
this	<i>hīc, haec, hoc; is, ea, id.</i>
though	<i>cum.</i>
three	<i>trēs, tria.</i>
throne	<i>rēgnum, -ī</i> (n.).
through	<i>per</i> (with acc.).
throw	<i>iaciō, 3, -ieci, iactus.</i>
throw	
around	<i>circumiciō, 3, -ieci,</i> <i>-iectus.</i>
throw into	
confusion	<i>perturbō, 1.</i>
time	<i>tempus, -oris</i> (n.).
time, for a	
long time	<i>diū.</i>
to	<i>ad, in</i> (prepos. with acc.).
top of	
mountain	<i>summus mōns, summ̄</i> <i>montis.</i>
tower	<i>turris, -is</i> (f.).
town	<i>oppidum, -ī</i> (n.).
tribe	<i>gēns, gentis</i> (f.).
troops	<i>cōpiae, -ārum</i> (f.).
try	<i>cōnor, -ārī, -ātus.</i>
two	<i>duo, duae, duo.</i>

U

undertake	<i>suscipio</i> , 3, - <i>cēpī</i> , - <i>ceptus</i> .
until	<i>dum</i> ; <i>priusquam</i> .
unwilling (be)	<i>nōlō</i> , <i>nolle</i> , <i>nōhū</i> .
urge	<i>hortor</i> , - <i>ārī</i> , - <i>ātus</i> ; <i>cohortor</i> , 1.
use	<i>utor</i> , - <i>ī</i> , <i>usus</i>

V

valor	<i>virtūs</i> , - <i>ūtis</i> (f.).
Varus	<i>Vārus</i> , - <i>ī</i> (m.).
Vatinius	<i>Vatīnius</i> , - <i>ī</i> (m.).
Veneti	<i>Venetī</i> , - <i>ōrum</i> (m.).
very (adj.)	<i>ipse</i> , - <i>a</i> , - <i>um</i> .
victory	<i>victōria</i> , <i>ae</i> (f.).
violence	<i>vīs</i> , <i>vīs</i> (f.).
Volusenus	<i>Volusēnus</i> , - <i>ī</i> (m.).

W

wage war	<i>bellum gerō</i> , 3, <i>gessī</i> , <i>gestus</i> .
wagon	<i>carrus</i> , - <i>ī</i> (m.).
wait for	<i>expectō</i> , 1.
wall	<i>mūrus</i> , - <i>ī</i> (m.).
war	<i>bellum</i> , - <i>ī</i> , (n.).
weapon	<i>tēlum</i> , - <i>ī</i> (n.).
well	<i>bene</i> .
what (inter. adj.)	<i>quī</i> , <i>quae</i> , <i>quod</i> .
what (inter. pro.)	<i>quid</i> .

when	<i>ubi</i> , <i>cum</i> .
where	<i>ubi</i> .
which	<i>quī</i> , <i>quae</i> , <i>quod</i> .
while	<i>dum</i> .
who (inter. pro.)	<i>quis</i> , <i>quid</i> .
who (rel. pro.)	<i>quī</i> , <i>quae</i> , <i>quod</i> .
whole	<i>tōtus</i> , - <i>a</i> , - <i>um</i> .
why	<i>cūr</i> .
wide	<i>lātus</i> , - <i>a</i> , - <i>um</i> .
willing, be willing	<i>volō</i> , <i>velle</i> , <i>volūi</i> .
win	<i>reportō</i> , 1; <i>potior</i> , <i>irī</i> , <i>ītus</i> .
wing	<i>cornū</i> , - <i>ūs</i> (n.).
winter	<i>hiems</i> , <i>hiemis</i> (f.).
winter quarters	<i>hiberna</i> , - <i>ōrum</i> (n.).
wish	<i>volō</i> , <i>velle</i> , <i>volūi</i> .
not wish	<i>nōlō</i> , <i>nolle</i> , <i>nōhū</i> .
with	<i>cum</i> (with abl.).
withstand	<i>sustineō</i> , 2, - <i>uī</i> , - <i>tenus</i> .
witness	<i>testis</i> , - <i>is</i> (c.).
woods	<i>silva</i> , - <i>ae</i> (f.).
wound	<i>vulnerō</i> , 1.
write	<i>scribō</i> , 3, <i>scripsī</i> , <i>scriptus</i> .
Y	
year	<i>annus</i> , - <i>ī</i> (m.).
yet	<i>tamen</i> .
yield	<i>cēdō</i> , 3, <i>cessī</i> , <i>cessurus</i> .

ELEMENTARY LATIN MASTERY LIST

(Reprinted from the latest New York State Syllabus)

The definitions of the following words will be found in the alphabetical lists on pages 63-82.

a, ab	cohors	filia	itaque
accipio	conficio	filius	iter
acer	consilium	finis	iubeo
acies	constituo	finitimus	laboro
ad	contendo	flumen	liber (adj.)
adventus	contra	fortis	laudo
aestas	convenio	frater	legatus
ager	convoco	frumentum	legio
ago	copia	fuga	lex
agricola	corpus	fugio	liber (adj.)
altus	cum (prep.)	gero	libero
amicitia	cum (conj.)	gladius	littera
amicus (n. and adj.)	cupio	gloria	loco
amo	cur	habeo	locus
animus	de	hic (pro.)	longus
annus	debeo	hiems	lux
ante	defendo	homo	magnus
appello	deligo	hora	malus
aqua	dico	hostis	maneo
arbitror	dies	iacio	manus
arma	discedo	ibi	mare
audio	diu	idem	mater
auxilium	do	ille	medius
bellum	domus	impedimentum	memoria
bonus	duco	imperator	meus
brevis	dux	imperium	miles
capio	e, ex	impero	milia
caput	ego	impetus	miser
castra	eo (verb)	in	mitto
causa (n.)	eques	incipio	modus
celer	et	infero	moneo
celeritas	exercitus	intellego	mons
certus	existimo	inter	mors
circum	facilis	interficio	moveo
civis	facio	insula	multitudo
civitas	femina	ipse	multus
clarus	fero	is	munio
cognosco	fides	ita	murus

natio	poena	res	totus
natura	pono	respondeo	trado
nauta	pons	rex	trans
navigo	populus	rogo	tu
navis	porta	saepe	tum
ne	porto	salus	tuus
-ne	possum	scio	ubi
nomen	post	scribo	urbs
non	postquam	sed	ut
noster	potens	semper	utor
notus	praemium	senator	venio
novus	praesidium	senatus	verbum
nox	princeps	sequor	vester
nullus	pro	servo	via
numerus	proelium	servus	victoria
nunc	proficiscor	signum	vicus
nuntio	progredior	silva	video
nuntius	prohibeo	sine	vigilia
ob	prope	socius	villa
occupo	propero	soror	vinco
omnis	propter	specto	vir
oppidum	provincia	spero	virtus
oppugno	puella	spes	vita
paro	puer	studium	voco
pars	pugno	sub	volo (velle)
parvus	puto	sui	vulnero
passus	quantus	sum	vulnus
pater	-que	supero	
patria	qui	suus	
pauci	quis	tam	
pax	quod	tantus	
pecunia	recipio	telum	
per	redeo	tempto	
periculum	regio	tempus	
persuadeo	regnum	teneo	
pervenio	rego	terra	
pes	relinquo	timeo	
peto	retineo	timor	

(Also cardinal and ordinal numerals: 1-10, 20, 100, 1,000; Roman numerals: I, V, X, L, C, D, M; names of places and persons commonly met in reading)

LATIN—Two Years

Monday, June 16, 1958—1:15 to 4:15 p.m., only

Answer all seven questions.

1. Translate the following passages into English:

[Caesar goes to Port Itius on the English Channel, where he prepares for the invasion of Britain.]

His rēbus cōstitūtis, Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cognōscit LX nāvēs tempestāte repulsās esse. Cum cursum tenēre nōn possent, eōdem ā quō profectae erant revertērunt. Caesar reliquās nāvēs ad nāvigandum parātās esse atque omnibus rēbus instructās esse invenit. Equitātus totius Galliae nūncrō mīlium quattuor etiam convenit principēsque omnibus ex civitatibus. Paucōs ex quibus quī amīcī erant relinquere in Galliā atque reliquōs sēcum dūcere cōstituit. Id fēcit quod, cum ipse abesset, tumultum Galliae verēbatur.

Erat unā cum cēteris Dumnorix Haeduus. Cum tempestās esset idōnea, Caesar mīlītēs equitēsque ascendere in navēs iubet. At Dumnorix cum equitibus Haeduōrum ā castris discēdere coepit. Hāc rē nūntiātā, statim Caesar eum interficī iubet.

—Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō*, V, 5-7 (adapted) [20]

[Caesar withdraws from the siege with Pompey following closely.]

Itaque Caesar sine ullā morā, postquam virōs vulnerātōs servāvit, omnia impedimēta primā nocte ex castris Apollōniam praemisit. Unā legiō praesidiō his missa est. Hōc factō, duās legiōnēs in castris retinuit atque eōdem itinere reliquās legiōnēs dē quartā vigiliā praemisit. Parvō spatiō intermissō signum darī iussit ut eius exitus quam tardissimē cognōscerētur. Tum ipse statim ēgressus et novissimum agmen cōsecūtus celeriter ex cōspectū castrōrum discessit. Postquam Pompēius eius cōsiliū cognōvit, nōn morātus est sed suū exercitum ex castris ēdūxit atque equitātum quī novissimum agmen morārētur praemisit. Pompēius, autem, eōs cōsequi nōn potuit quod Caesar iam longē aberat.

—Caesar, *Dē Bellō Civilī*, III, 75 (adapted) [20]

2. Translate into Latin *four* of the following sentences: [16]

- The Romans heard that the enemy had led a large army into Gaul.
- After the town had been captured, many hostages were given to Caesar.
- The river was so deep that our men were unable to cross at that time.
- When the citizens had seen the danger, they decided to remain in the city a few days.
- The senate asked why the Helvetians were coming with their troops.
- The soldiers hastened to the province to obtain the aid of the allies.

3. Do *not* write a translation of this passage; read it through carefully and then answer in English *each* of the questions below.

[Darius with Datis and Artaphernes invades Greece.]

Dārius, autem, rēx Persārū, cum ex Eurōpā in Asiā redisset, clas-

sem nāvium centum comparāvit ut Graeciam in suam potestātem redūceret. Eī Dātīm et Artaphernem praefecit. Hī virī celeriter urbem Eretriam cēperunt omnēque civēs captōs in Asiam ad rēgem misērunt. Tum ad Atticam accessērunt atque suās cōpiās in campum Marathōna dēdūxērunt. Is abest ab oppidō milia passuum decem. Athēniēsēs hōc tumultū permōtī auxilium ā Spartānis petivērunt; domī nōmināvērunt decem praetōrēs, quī exercitū praecessent. In hīs erat Miltiadēs, quī eōs hortābātur ut campum quam celerrimē caperent potius quam moenibus sē dēfenderent.

—Nepos, *Dē Rēgibus*, I, 4 (adapted)

- a. Who was Darius and where had he been? [1]
- b. What did he do when he returned to Asia? Why? [2]
- c. What two things did Datis and Artaphernes accomplish? [2]
- d. What did they do when they reached Attica? [1]
- e. How far was this plain from the town? [1]
- f. Why did the Athenians ask the Spartans for aid? [1]
- g. What was the duty of the ten praetors? [1]
- h. What did Miltiades urge them to do? [1]

4. On the line at the right of *each* sentence below, write the word or expression, chosen from those in the parentheses, that is grammatically correct. [6]

- | | |
|---|--------|
| a. Puer (ad villam, villae) properāvit. | a..... |
| b. Rēx (ad Rōmānōs, Rōmānis) grātus erat. | b..... |
| c. In eō locō (ut manērent, manēre) potuērunt. | c..... |
| d. Ubi est tuus pater, (Mārcus, Mārce)? | d..... |
| e. Rogāvī cūr id (facerent, faciēbant). | e..... |
| f. Omnēs militēs (gladiōs, gladiis) ūtēbantur. | f..... |
| g. Dux (militēs convenīre, ut militēs convenirent) dixit. | g..... |
| h. Illa est fēmina (quae, quam) vidī. | h..... |
| i. Labiēnus (civēs, civibus) ut oppidum relinquerent persuāsit. | i..... |
| j. Equus (cum celeritāte, celeritāte) cucurrit. | j..... |
| k. Caesar (imperātor, imperātōrem) exercitūs factus est. | k..... |
| l. Labor (puellis, ā puellis) perfectus est. | l..... |

5. Write *all* the specified forms, placing your answers on the lines at the right: [10]

- | | |
|--|------------------|
| a-b. genitive singular of <i>hic adventus</i> | a-b..... |
| c-d. nominative plural of <i>ille filius</i> | c-d..... |
| e-f. ablative singular of <i>vir fortis</i> | e-f..... |
| g-h. accusative singular of <i>id vulnus</i> | g-h..... |
| i-j. dative singular of <i>ūna rēs</i> | i-j..... |
| k. superlative nominative singular masculine of <i>malus</i> | k..... |
| l. comparative of <i>longē</i> | l..... |
| m-n. pluperfect subjunctive active third plural of <i>cōnficiō</i>
<i>doceō</i> | m.....
n..... |
| o-p. perfect indicative third singular of <i>arbitror</i>
<i>possum</i> | o.....
p..... |
| q-r. future indicative active first plural of <i>rogō</i>
<i>regō</i> | q.....
r..... |
| s. present participle of <i>laudō</i> | s..... |
| t. perfect passive infinitive of <i>vincō</i> | t..... |

6. For *each* sentence below, write in Column I a Latin word with which the italicized word is associated by derivation. Then, in Column II, write the *number* preceding the word or expression below each sentence that best expresses the meaning of the italicized word. [8]

Column I Column II

[Illustration: The explanation was made in a very *amicable* manner.

(1)angry (2)belligerent (3)friendly (4)verbose amicus 3
.....]
Column I Column II

- a. The *interrogation* lasted for many hours.
(1)interruption (2)audition (3)meeting
(4)questioning a..... a.....
- b. We respect men of *vision*.
(1)wealth (2)courage (3)foresight
(4)ambition b..... b.....
- c. There was no *intervention* at this time.
(1)interference (2)threat (3)proposal
(4)rejoicing c..... c.....
- d. Illness *retarded* his progress.
(1)stopped (2)delayed (3)changed
(4)prevented d..... d.....
- e. They did not *contradict* the statement.
(1)confirm (2)alter (3)endorse (4)deny e..... e.....
- f. He is a man of great *integrity*.
(1)cleverness (2)honesty (3)generosity
(4)distinction f..... f.....
- g. He received *vital* information.
(1)essential (2)unimportant (3)interesting
(4)perplexing g..... g.....
- h. The child's *intelligence* is remarkable.
(1)native ability (2)calmness (3)self-
confidence (4)loyalty h..... h.....

7. On the line at the right of each of *ten* of the statements below, write the *number* preceding the word or expression that best completes the statement. [10]

- a. "These are my jewels," responded Cornelia, refer-
ring to her (1)sons (2)daughters (3)slaves
(4)rings a.....
- b. The queen of the lower world was (1)Circe (2)
Penelope (3)Proserpina (4)Ceres b.....
- c. In Gaul the ruling class consisted of men known as
(1)*rēgēs* (2)*praetōrēs* (3)*cōsulēs* (4)*Druidēs* c.....
- d. The chieftain who annoyed Caesar with his war-
chariots was (1)Mithridates (2)Vercingetorix
(3)Hannibal (4)Cassivellaunus d.....
- e. In offensive warfare Caesar relied primarily on (1)
caution (2)speed (3)delay (4)rashness e.....
- f. The business and financial section of Rome was the
(1)Campus Martius (2)Forum (3)Palatine (4)Cir-
cus Maximus f.....

- f. For many days the Romans did not hear that their ambassadors had been seized.

3. Do *not* write a translation of the following passage; read it through carefully and then answer in English *each* of the questions below. [Use everything in the text that will make your answers clear and complete.] [10]

[After the battle of Dyrrachium the citizens of Gomphi consider deserting to Pompey.]

Caesar cum exercitū Gomphōs pervēnit, quod est oppidum primum Thessaliae venientibus ab Ēpiro. Incolae huius oppidi paucis ante mēn-sibus ad Caesarem lēgātōs miserant ut suis omnibus commeātibus uterē-tur praesidiumque ab eō militum petiverant. Sed fāmam iam audiverant dē proeliō Dyrrachinō. Itaque Androsthēnēs, praetor Thessaliae, cum sē esse socium Caesaris in rēbus adversis nōllet, omnem ex agris multi-tudinem servōrum ac liberōrum in oppidum coēgit. Tum portās clausit et ad Pompeium nūtiōs misit ut ad sē auxilium ferret.

—Caesar, *Dē Bellō Cīvili*, III, 80 (adapted)

- Who accompanied Caesar to Gomphi?
- Where was Gomphi located for travelers from Epirus?
- What had the people of Gomphi done a few months previously?
- What offer had they made to Caesar?
- What favor had they asked?
- What report had reached them?
- Who was Androstenes?
- In what situation was he unwilling to be involved?
- What two classes of men did he collect?
- What did he request Pompey to do?

4. Write *all* the specified forms, placing your answers on the lines at the right. [10]

- | | |
|--|------------------|
| a-b. genitive singular of <i>decima legiō</i> | a-b..... |
| c-d. ablative singular of <i>gravis impetus</i> | c-d..... |
| e-f. accusative singular of <i>eadem fēmina</i> | e-f..... |
| g-h. genitive plural of <i>magnus portus</i> | g-h..... |
| i. superlative masculine singular nominative of
audāx | i..... |
| j. positive degree of the adverb from <i>brevis</i> | j..... |
| k-l. future indicative active third singular of <i>doceō</i>
ēripīō | k.....
l..... |
| m-n. active participles of <i>gerō</i> | m-n..... |
| o-p. imperfect subjunctive third plural of <i>ēō</i>
moror | o.....
p..... |
| q-r. perfect indicative active third plural of <i>agō</i>
removēō | q.....
r..... |
| s-t. present passive infinitive of <i>habēō</i>
mittō | s.....
t..... |

5. On the line at the right of *each* sentence below, write the word or expression, chosen from those in the parentheses, that is grammatically correct: [6]

- | | |
|---|--------|
| a. (Magnō clāmōre, Magnō cum clāmōre) Gallōs terruērunt. | a..... |
| b. Cōnsilia (Labiēnō, ā Labiēnō) capienda sunt. | b..... |
| c. Hostēs (discesserant, discessisse) putāvērunt. | c..... |
| d. Cum fortis (esset, erat), in mediōs hostēs prōcessit. | d..... |
| e. Castrīs eōrum incēnsīs, victōria erit (nobis, ad nōs). | e..... |
| f. Intellegimus quid (agerēs, agās). | f..... |
| g. Domum revertam (ut mātrem videam, mātrem vidēre). | g..... |
| h. Frūmentum (ad eōs, eīs) nōn dēcrat. | h..... |
| i. Ab senātū (amīcus, amicum) appellātus est. | i..... |
| j. Ibi (duābus hōrīs, duās hōrās) manēbunt. | j..... |
| k. Auxilium (Rōmānīs, ad Rōmānōs) nōn dedimus. | k..... |
| l. Rēgīna (quī, quae) vēnit pecuniam tulit. | l..... |

6. For *each* sentence below, write in column I a Latin word with which the italicized word is associated by derivation. Then in column II, write the *number* preceding the word or expression below each sentence that best expresses the meaning of the italicized word. [8]

[Illustration: The explanation was made in a very *amicable* manner.

(1)angry (2)belligerent (3)friendly (4)verbose

Column I Column II

amicus 3

Column I Column II

a. The speaker attempted in vain to *support* his statement.

(1)withdraw (2)uphold (3)deny (4)improve

a..... a.....

b. Her *salutation* was gracious and sincere.

(1)greeting (2)message (3)compliment (4)presentation

b..... b.....

c. At this hour the *solarium* is usually empty.

(1)attic study (2)swimming pool (3)rum-pus room (4)sun parlor

c..... c.....

d. This student did not *participate* in athletics.

(1)lead (2)take part (3)succeed (4)continue

d..... d.....

e. Our difficulties in planning the picnic were *insuperable*.

(1)challenging (2)discouraging (3)unending (4)unconquerable

e..... e.....

f. Because of the sandstorm we could not *ventilate* the room.

(1)air (2)seal (3)clean (4)arrange

f..... f.....

- g. *Silvan* scenes always appeal to him.
 (1)Misty (2)Romantic (3)Homely
 (4)Forest g..... g.....
- h. The judge's voice had a note of *finality*.
 (1)elegance (2)loftiness (3)decisiveness
 (4)scorn h..... h.....

7. On the line at the right of each of *ten* of the statements below, write the *number* preceding the word or expression that best completes the statement. [10]

- a. Caesar's final victory over Pompey himself occurred at (1)Rome (2)Pharsalus (3)Thapsus (4)Brundisium a.....
- b. The century, nominally 100 men, generally consisted of (1) 120 (2) 80 (3) 60 (4) 40 b.....
- c. The standard of the Roman legion was the (1)*vēxillum* (2)*aquila* (3)*būcina* (4)*trāgula* c.....
- d. The German leader whom Caesar forced to return across the Rhine was (1)Sabinus (2)Ariovistus (3)Galba (4)Cassivellaunus d.....
- e. To educate their children the Romans often employed teachers from (1)Egypt (2)Spain (3)Greece (4)Britain e.....
- f. A Roman kitchen was called (1)*ātrium* (2)*peri-stylum* (3)*vestibulum* (4)*culina* f.....
- g. The god to whom the Romans gave credit for success in war was (1)Jupiter (2)Apollo (3)Mercury (4)Mars g.....
- h. Caesar was killed because he (1)oppressed the poor (2)was becoming dangerously powerful (3)changed the calendar (4)made too many grants of land to his veterans h.....
- i. A Roman officer charged with supplying food and clothing to soldiers was known as a (1)*mercātor* (2)*praetor* (3)*quaestor* (4)*tribūnus* i.....
- j. The Roman legion was composed of (1)Roman citizens (2)conquered barbarians (3)hired troops (4)freed men j.....
- k. Most famous of the Seven Hills of Rome for beautiful residences was the (1)Palatine (2)Esquiline (3)Capitoline (4)Quirinal k.....
- l. A famous Roman road builder was (1)Lucius Lucullus (2)Quintus Hortensius (3)Appius Claudius (4)Marcus Cato l.....
- m. A Roman held the office of praetor (1)for one year (2)for two years (3)until elected consul (4)for life m.....
- n. By refusing to divorce his wife, Caesar aroused the the hatred of (1)Pompey (2)Cinna (3)Crassus (4)Sulla n.....

LATIN—Two Years

Tuesday, June 16, 1959—1:15 to 4:15 p.m., only

Answer all seven questions.

1. Translate the following passages into English:

[Alexander and his horse, Bucephalus]

Equus Alexandrī rēgis Bucephalas nōmine fuit. Dē hōc equō hae fabulae sunt nōtae. Ubi *ornātus* erat et armātus ad proelium, nēmō eum ascendere poterat, nisi rēx. Cum Alexander in Bellō *Indicō* rēs fortēs faceret, in aciem hostium cum Bucephalā ivit, sed salūtem suam nōn satis prōvidit. Cōnectis undique tēlis, equus in capite et in corpore graviter vulnerātus est. Antequam mortuus est, tamen ex mediis hostibus rēgem magnā cum celeritāte statim portāvit, atque ubi cum extrā tēla extulit, in terrā *cēcidit* et ē vitā excessit. Tum Alexander, bellō cōfectō, oppidum in eisdem locis posuit atque ob honōrem equi id Bucephalos appellātum est.

—Aulus Gellius, *Noctēs Atticae* (adapted) [20]

ornātus—equipped

Indicō—Indian

cēcidit—from *cadō*, fall

[Deceived by the stratagem of Sabinus,
the enemy attacked his camp.]

Sabinus, ut fāmam timōris suī cōfirmāret, quendam Gallum dēlēgit ex eis quōs auxiliī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnis praemiis persuādet ut ad hostēs trāseat et quid fieri velit docet. Ubi Gallus prō *perfugā* ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum nūntiat. Dēmōnstrat Caesarem ipsum ā Venetis premiū et dicit proximā nocte Sabinum ex castris exercitum ēductūrum esse ut ad Caesarem auxiliū ferat. Hōc auditō, omnēs conclāmant hanc occasiōnem victōriae nōn āmittendam esse et sē ad castra Sabini ire dēbēre. Multae rēs ad hoc cōsiliū Gallōs hortābantur, maximē quod hominēs facile crēdunt id quod volunt. Iis rēbus adducti arma capiunt et ad castra contendunt.

—Caesar, *Dē Bello Gallicō*, III, 18 (adapted) [20]

perfugā—deserter

2. Translate into Latin *four* of the following sentences: [16]

- When Caesar had hastened into Gaul with his legions, he attacked the enemy.
- The messenger knew that the soldiers were marching through the territory of the enemy.
- The attack was so great that the Helvetians were not able to hold the town.
- The Romans made a bridge across the river in order to defend the province.
- After the city had been captured, the general led all the troops back into camp.
- The allies asked why Caesar was not sending aid on that day.

3. Do *not* write a translation of this passage; read it through carefully and then answer in English *each* of the questions below. [10]

[Hamilcar makes peace with the Romans.]

Hamilcar, adulēscēns Carthāginiēnsis, primō Punicō bellō in Siciliā exercitui praeesse coepit. Ante eius adventum et mari et terrā rēs Carthāginiēnsium male gerēbantur. Ubi tamen adfuit saepe oppugnāvit semperque superior discessit. Interim Carthāginiēnsēs, classe ā Rōmānīs superatā, statuērunt bellī finem facere eamque rem iūdicio Hamilcaris permisērunt. Ille, etsi bellum gerere studēbat, tamen pācem faciendam esse putāvit quod patriam oppressam diūtius calamitatēs bellī ferre nōn posse intelligēbat. Sed Carthāginiēnsēs, si eis tempus esset ad rēs *reficiendās*, Rōmānōs armīs secūtī virtūte vincerent. Hōc cōsilio pācem effēcit.

—Nepos, *Hamilcar I* (adapted)

reficiendās—from *reficiō*, restore

- a. Who was Hamilcar?
- b. What was his responsibility in the first Punic War?
- c. In what situation were the Carthaginians before his arrival?
- d. How did he conduct himself against the enemy?
- e. What happened to the Carthaginian fleet?
- f. Name one thing which the Carthaginians decided to do.
- g. What did Hamilcar actually wish to do?
- h. Nevertheless, what better course of action did he believe should be pursued?
- i. Why did he think that?
- j. What did Hamilcar think his people might do if given time?

4. On the line at the right of *each* sentence below, write the word or expression, chosen from those in the parentheses, that is grammatically correct. [6]

- | | |
|--|--------|
| a. Caesar iter multa milia (passūs, passuum) faciēbat. | a..... |
| b. Rōmānī (ad Gallōs, Gallīs) finitimī erant. | b..... |
| c. Monuit (nē, ut nōn) fugerent. | c..... |
| d. Quīnque (diēbus, diēs) mānsērunt. | d..... |
| e. (Hieme, In hieme) Rōmānī nōn pugnābant. | e..... |
| f. Nūntius (ab hostibus, hostibus) interfectus est. | f..... |
| g. Dux existimāvit milītēs fortiter (pugnāvisse, pugnāvissent). | g..... |
| h. Servus fūgerat nē (interficiātur, interficerētur). | h..... |
| i. Nōs omnēs (labōrāre, ut labōrēmus) dēbēmus. | i..... |
| j. Imperātor (militibus, milītēs) ut impetum facerent imperāvit. | j..... |
| k. Servum (quī, quem) discēdēbat vīdī. | k..... |
| l. Locus (ad castra, castrīs) idōneus est. | l..... |

5. Write *all* the specified forms, placing your answers on the lines at the right: [10]

- | | |
|---|----------|
| a-b. accusative plural of <i>ea manus</i> | a-b..... |
| c-d. genitive singular of <i>īdem vir</i> | c-d..... |
| e-f. ablative singular of <i>prima ciēs</i> | e-f..... |
| g-h. dative and accusative singular of <i>ego</i> | g..... |
| | h..... |
| i. comparative nominative singular masculine of <i>magnus</i> | i..... |

j.	superlative of <i>breviter</i>	j.....
k-l.	future active indicative third plural of <i>pōnō</i> <i>timeō</i>	k.....
		l.....
m-n.	perfect indicative third singular of <i>cōnor</i> <i>possum</i>	m.....
		n.....
o-p.	pluperfect subjunctive active and passive third singular of <i>capīō</i>	o.....
		p.....
q-r.	present active indicative and subjunctive third plural of <i>ferō</i>	q.....
		r.....
s.	future active infinitive of <i>dicō</i>	s.....
t.	future passive participle of <i>mūniō</i>	t.....

6. For *each* sentence below, write in Column I a Latin word with which the italicized word is associated by derivation. Then, in column II, write the *number* preceding the word or expression below each sentence that best expresses the meaning of the italicized word. [8]

	Column I	Column II
[Illustration: The explanation was made in a very <i>amicable</i> manner.		
(1)angry (2)belligerent (3)friendly (4)verbose	amicus	3
		]
	Column I	Column II
a. The police were unable to <i>pacify</i> the rioting youths.		
(1)intimidate (2)arrest (3)disperse (4)calm	a.....	a.....
b. He considered those difficulties to be <i>insuperable</i> .		
(1)unavoidable (2)insurmountable (3)unbearable (4)unimportant	b.....	b.....
c. War is a <i>potential</i> menace in our time.		
(1)dangerous (2)serious (3)possible (4)continuous	c.....	c.....
d. The new roads were intended to <i>facilitate</i> the movement of traffic.		
(1)make easier (2)control (3)reroute (4)reduce	d.....	d.....
e. The Gracchi were interested in <i>agrarian</i> reforms.		
(1)election (2)religion (3)land (4)tax	e.....	e.....
f. <i>Intermittent</i> sounds came from the loud-speaker.		
(1)Continuous (2)Periodic (3)Raucous (4)Muffled	f.....	f.....
g. <i>Linguistic</i> studies are considered increasingly important.		
(1)Scholarly (2)Scientific (3)Language (4)Advanced	g.....	g.....

h. We should not *minimize* the danger from radioactivity.

- (1)underestimate (2)ignore (3)despair of
(4)exaggerate

h..... h.....

7. On the line at the right of each of *ten* of the statements below, write the *number* preceding the word or expression that best completes the statement. [10]

a. Caesar belonged to the social group called (1)*populārēs* (2)*optimātēs* (3)*equitēs* (4)*libertīni*

a.....

b. As a youth, Caesar went to Rhodes to study (1) history (2)oratory (3)art (4)military science

b.....

c. While praetor, Caesar served as a (1)judge (2) lawyer (3)treasurer (4)priest

c.....

d. To strengthen his alliance with Pompey, Caesar (1)gave him his daughter, Julia, in marriage (2) offered him wealth (3)put a fleet at his disposal (4)made him a senator

d.....

e. In his proconsulship, Caesar fought many campaigns in the conquest of (1)Greece (2)Gaul (3) Egypt (4)Asia Minor

e.....

f. Caesar impressed the Germans by his (1)oratory (2)capture of the pirates (3)bridging of the Rhine (4)linguistic ability

f.....

g. Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in charge of the tenth legion was (1)Labienus (2)Antony (3) Considius (4)Diviciacus

g.....

h. One of the non-military achievements of Caesar was (1)abolition of slavery (2)establishment of free public education (3)building of the Colosseum (4)revision of the calendar

h.....

i. The last office that Caesar held was that of (1)tribune (2)censor (3)dictator (4)aedile

i.....

j. An adventurer who gained the Golden Fleece was (1)Hercules (2)Perseus (3)Theseus (4)Jason

j.....

k. The Romans enjoyed watching races in the (1)Circus Maximus (2)Comitium (3)Basilica Julia (4)Roman Forum

k.....

l. For its culture, Rome was most indebted to (1) Egypt (2)Britain (3)Greece (4)Syria

l.....

m. A Roman camp was fortified by a *vallum* and a (1)*catapulta* (2)*fossa* (3)*galea* (4)*vexillum*

m.....

n. The home of all the gods was Mount (1)Vesuvius (2)Parnassus (3)Aetna (4)Olympus

n.....

LATIN—Two Years

Monday, June 20, 1960—1:15 to 4:15 p.m., only

Answer all seven questions.

1. Translate the following passages into English:

[The enemy attacks the Roman camp with great violence.]

Cum Rōmānī castra pōnerent, hostēs ex omnibus partibus, signō datō, dēscendere coepērunt et tēla in vāllum iaciēbant. Primō nostrī fortiter pugnābant neque frūstrā ullum tēlum mittēbant. Si pars quaedam castrōrum prēmī vidēbātur, eō contendēbant et auxilium ferēbant. Cum, autem, hostēs *dēfessī* excēdēbant, alii quī in proeliō nōn fuerant appropinquābant. Nōn modō Rōmānī *dēfessī* nōn ex pugnā excessērunt, sed etiam vulnerātī ex eō locō ubi steterant excēdere nōn poterant, quod nostrī numerō paucī erant. Itaque P. Sextius Baculus, centuriō Rōmānus, et G. Volusēnus ad Galbā concurrunt atque unam spem salutis esse celeriter exīre docent. Hoc maximā difficultāte faciunt.

—Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō*, III, 4-5 (adapted) [20]

dēfessī—weary

[The Gauls try to complete the destruction of Rome.]

Gallī, cum inter incendia et ruinās urbis nihil praeter armātōs hostēs vidērent, impetum facere in *arcem* cōstituunt. Primā lūce, omnis multitūdō in forum dūcitur. Ab eō locō Gallī ad montem Capitōlinum magnō clāmōre prōgrediuntur. Adventum eōrum Rōmānī nōn timent sed praesidiis finis ad omnēs aditus contendunt ubi hostēs ascendere possunt. Manent in mediō monte atque ex locō superiōre impetum faciunt et Gallōs tantā caede dēpellunt ut nunquam postea Gallī hoc genus pugnae temptāverint.

Dēspērātā victoriā, Gallī *arcem* obsidēre parant sed frūmentum nōn habent. Igitur pars exercitūs per finitimōs populōs ad agrōs vāstandōs missa est.

—Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā*, V, 43 (adapted) [20]

arx, arcis—citadel

2. Translate into Latin *four* of the following sentences: [16]

- The soldiers hastened through the province in order to fortify that town.
- The lieutenant was not able to learn what the troops of the enemy were doing in this place.
- The general thought that the Romans had sailed from the harbor of the Gauls because of fear.
- The horsemen were so swift that they arrived at the camp on the next day.
- After the cavalry had been sent ahead, Caesar ordered all the legions to advance.
- When the foot soldiers had fled, Caesar followed them across the river with great speed.

3. Do *not* write a translation of this passage; read it through carefully several times and then answer in complete English sentences *each*

of the questions below. Use everything in the text that will make your answers clear and complete.

[The Sotiates attack Crassus on the march.]

P. Crassus, cum in Aquitāniam vēnisset, intellēxit in eis locis bellum magnā cum diligentīā gerendum esse. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvisā, viris fortibus ēvocātis, in Sotiātum finēs exercitum dūxit.

Cuius adventū cognitō, Sotiātēs in itinere agmen nostrum aggressi sunt; tum equitātū suō pulsō, milites sē ostendērunt et nostrōs reppulērunt. Pugnātum est diū atque acriter cum Sotiātēs sē suā virtūte libertatem tōtius Aquitāniae dēfendere putārent. Nostri, autem, quid sine imperātore et sine reliquis legiōnibus efficere possent dēmōstrāre cupivērunt. Hostēs, tandem, vulneribus cōfecti, terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō, Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiātum oppugnāvit.

—Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō*, III, 20-21 (adapted)

- a. What did P. Crassus realize ought to be done? [1]
- b. What two preparations did he make before leading the army into the territory of the Sotiates? [2]
- c. What did the Sotiates do upon his arrival? [1]
- d. What happened to the cavalry of the Sotiates? [1]
- e. What two things did the enemy's soldiers then do? [1]
- f. Why did the Sotiates fight so fiercely? [1]
- g. What did the Roman soldiers wish to show? [1]
- h. What did the enemy do at last? [1]
- i. What did Crassus do after killing a large number of the enemy? [1]

4. On the line at the right of *each* sentence below, write the *number* preceding the word or expression that makes the sentence grammatically correct. [6]

- a. Litterae [(1)ā senātōre (2)senātōrem (3)senātōre (4)senātōrēs] missae sunt. a.....
- b. Princeps petivit cūr aciēs nōn instrūcta (1)erant (2)esset (3)esse (4)erat b.....
- c. Dux praemium [(1)equite (2)ad equitem (3)ad equitēs (4)equitī] dedit. c.....
- d. Imperātor legiōnem [(1)ut pugnet (2)pugnāre (3)ut pugnāret (4)quī pugnāret] iūssit. d.....
- e. Marcus [(1)tribūnī (2)tribūnum (3)tribūnō (4)tribūnus] factus est. e.....
- f. Properā, [(1)amicō (2)amicus (3)amīce (4)amicī], ad auxilium ferendum. f.....
- g. Duo milia [(1)militum (2)ex militibus (3)militēs (4)militis] prōgressi sunt. g.....
- h. Vir auxiliō [(1)socii (2)ad socium (3)sociō (4)prō sociō] erat. h.....
- i. Lēgātus [(1)rēgum (2)rēgī (3)rēgem (4)rēge] persuādere nōn poterat. i.....
- j. Galli [(1)tēlōrum magnōrum (2)tēlis magnis (3)tēla magna (4)tēlum magnum] ūtuntur. j.....

- k. *Exercitus* [(1)*prō multīs diēbus* (2)*in multōs diēs* (3)*multōs diēs* (4)*ad multōs diēs*] *fugiebāt.* k.....
- l. *Germānī* [(1)*familiām* (2)*familiīs* (3)*familiās* (4)*cum familiīs*] *vēnērunt.* l.....

5. Write *all* the specified forms, placing your answers on the lines at the right: [10]

- | | |
|---|----------|
| a-b. accusative plural of <i>filius miser</i> | a-b..... |
| c-d. accusative singular of <i>id flūmen</i> | c-d..... |
| e-f. ablative singular of <i>lēx omnis</i> | e-f..... |
| g-h. genitive singular of <i>spēs ipsa</i> | g-h..... |
| i. dative singular of <i>tū</i> | i..... |
| j-k. comparative and superlative of <i>graviter</i> | j..... |
| | k..... |
| l. perfect active indicative third plural of <i>accipiō</i> | l..... |
| m. pluperfect passive indicative third singular of <i>laudō</i> | m..... |
| n. future indicative active first plural of <i>moveō</i> | n..... |
| o. present subjunctive active third singular of <i>sciō</i> | o..... |
| p. imperfect subjunctive third plural of <i>eō</i> | p..... |
| q-r. perfect infinitives, active and passive, of <i>scribō</i> | q..... |
| | r..... |
| s. future active participle of <i>proficīscor</i> | s..... |
| t. present active imperative second plural of <i>servō</i> | t..... |

6. For *each* sentence below, write in column I a Latin word with which the italicized word is associated by derivation. Then, in column II, write the *number* preceding the word or expression below each sentence that best expresses the meaning of the italicized word. [8]

Column I Column II

[Illustration: The explanation was made in a very *amicable* manner.

- (1)angry (2)belligerent (3)friendly (4)verbose amicus 3

Column I Column II

- | | | |
|---|--------|--------|
| a. Owing to its <i>paucity</i> , water was at a premium.
(1)abundance (2)scarcity (3)pollution
(4)fluoridation | a..... | a..... |
| b. That nation was <i>invincible</i> for centuries.
(1)unconquerable (2)prosperous (3)unjust
(4)aggressive | b..... | b..... |
| c. The king's declaration <i>nullified</i> the rights of the citizens.
(1)destroyed (2)multiplied (3)insured
(4)legalized | c..... | c..... |
| d. In this circumstance <i>fortitude</i> is needed.
(1)help (2)speed (3)armament
(4)courage | d..... | d..... |

- e. Black birch will not *ignite* easily.
 (1)bend (2)catch fire (3)grow (4)rot e..... e.....
- f. Lack of money is no *impediment* to good living.
 (1)aid (2)advantage (3)hindrance (4)encouragement f..... f.....
- g. The President *conferred* with his cabinet.
 (1)agreed (2)remained (3)was satisfied (4)consulted g..... g.....
- h. The candidate's speech was *audacious*.
 (1)political (2)brilliant (3)daring (4)unscheduled h..... h.....

7. On the line at the right of each of *ten* of the statements below, write the *number* preceding the word or expression that best completes the statement. [10]

- a. By marrying Cornelia, Caesar incurred the anger of (1)Brutus (2)Hannibal (3)Scipio (4)Sulla a.....
- b. Caesar showed military prowess in his youth by the capture of a group of (1)rebels (2)pirates (3)slaves (4)deserters b.....
- c. In 58 B.C. Caesar was made proconsul of (1)Gaul (2)Egypt (3)Spain (4)Bithynia c.....
- d. Caesar's political rival was (1)Octavian (2)Pompey (3)Alexander (4)Cinna d.....
- e. The usual commander of a Roman legion was called (1)*quaestor* (2)*centuriō* (3)*lictor* (4)*lēgātus* e.....
- f. The usual battle formation of the Roman army was the (1)*novissimum agmen* (2)*tormenta* (3)*triplex aciēs* (4)*impedimenta* f.....
- g. Of all the Gauls, the bravest were the (1)Belgians (2)Helvetians (3)Aquitanians (4)Sequanians g.....
- h. The Ides of March marks the occasion of Caesar's (1)death (2)birth (3)victory in Egypt (4)crossing of the Rubicon h.....
- i. Caesar uttered the words "*Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī*" on the occasion of his (1)defeat of the Germans (2)victory in Pontus (3)arrival in Britain (4)assassination i.....
- j. Much of our knowledge of daily Roman life comes from the study of the buried city of (1)Pompeii (2)Naples (3)Delphi (4)Milan j.....
- k. One of Rome's most dangerous enemies was (1)Alexander (2)Cato (3)Hannibal (4)Marius k.....
- l. A Roman contribution to civilization was (1)silk (2)the wheel (3)glass (4)good roads l.....
- m. An ancient ruin in Rome often visited by tourists is (1)the Parthenon (2)the Colosseum (3)the Erechtheum (4)Cleopatra's Needle m.....
- n. *Paris* gave the golden apple to (1)Juno (2)Diana (3)Venus (4)Psyche n.....

LATIN—Two Years

Tuesday, June 20, 1961—1:15 to 4:15 p.m., only

Answer all seven questions.

1. Translate the following passages into English:

[The Gauls turn from besieging the Roman camp to attack Caesar.

He is warned of their approach by a messenger from Cicero.]

a. Gallī, rē cognitā per explorātōrēs, obsidiōnem relinquunt et ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiis, ad numerum circiter milia LX, contendunt. Cicerō, datā facultāte, quendam Gallum ab *Verticōne*, nōbili virō Nerviorum, petit, quī litterās ad Caesarem ferat; hunc monet ut iter diligenter faciat; scribit in litteris hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque multitudinem ad eum vertisse. His litteris circiter mediā nocte lātis, Caesar suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad pugnandum animō cōfirmat. Posterō diē primā lūce movet castra et circiter milia passuum quattuor prōgressus, trāns vallem et flūmen multitudinem hostium videt.

—Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō*, V, 49 (adapted) [20]

Verticōne—*Verticō* is nominative singular

[Hannibal, by a clever stratagem, outwits Fabius near Capua.]

b. Hannibal, hāc pugnā pugnātā, Rōmam profectus est. Nūllō resistente, in propinquis montibus morātus est. Cum Hannibal milites in castris complūrēs diēs tenuisset et Capuam rediret, Q. Fabius Maximus, dictātor Rōmānus, in agrō contrā eum cōpiās instrūxit. Hannibal, montibus clausus, sine ūllā difficultāte salutem per *insidiās* invēnit. Nam incendit *sarmenta* quae in cornibus *iuvencōrum* *dēligāverat* et hōrum multitudinem magnam ad Rōmānōs mīsit. Rōmānī spectāculō novō ita commōti sunt ut nēmō extrā vāllum castrōrum ēgredi auderet.

Quamdiū Hannibal in Italiā fuit, nēmō eī in aciē restitit; nēmō post pugnam *Cannēensem* contrā eum castra in campō posuit.

—C. Nepos, *Hannibal*, 5 (adapted) [20]

insidiās—strategy

sarmenta—faggots (bundle of twigs)

iuvencōrum—young bulls

dēligāverat—had tied

quamdiū—as long as

Cannēensem—of Cannae

2. Translate into Latin *four* of the following sentences: [16]

a. The brave citizens seized arms in order to defend their city.

b. After the town had been conquered, the soldiers killed all the men with swords.

c. The leader said that he would easily drive the enemy from the territory.

d. The horsemen were so swift that they were able to flee from danger.

- e. When Caesar had made the journey into the province, he put Labienus in charge of the army.
- f. At that time the general asked why the lieutenant and the tenth legion were not making an attack.

3. Do *not* write a translation of this passage; read it through carefully several times and then answer in *complete English sentences each* of the questions below. Use everything in the text that will make your answers clear and complete. [10]

[The Greek Themistocles outwits the Persian Xerxes.]

At Xerxēs, Thermopylīs expugnātis, statim ad urbem Athēnās accessit atque eam incendiō *dēlēvit*. Cum nautae, flammā perterriti, manēre nōn auderent et plūrīmi hortarentur ut domōs suās redirent et murō sē dēfenderent, Themistoclēs ūnus restitit et *ūniversōs* vincere posse dīcēbat, sed *dispersōs* cōfirmābat *peritūrōs esse*. Cum Eurybiadēs, rēx Spartānōrum, qui tum bellō praeerat, verbis nōn movēbātur, Themistoclēs servum suum fidēlissimum ad Xerxem misit ut eī nūntiāret Graecōs in fugā esse atque, si Graecōs statim aggredērētur brevī tempore eum omnēs oppressūrum esse. Hāc rē auditā, Xerxēs nihil malī crēdēns, postridiē iniquō sibi locō, in tam angustō marī *cōnflīxit* ut eius multitudō nāvium *explicārī* nōn posset. Victus igitur est magis etiam cōsiliō Themistoclis quam armīs Graeciae.

—Nepos, *Themistocles*, 4 (adapted)

dēlēvit—*vāstāvit*

ūniversōs—if united

dispersōs—if scattered

peritūrōs esse—from *pereō*, perish

cōnflīxit—*proelium commisit*

explicārī—from *explicō*, spread out

- a. What success did Xerxes achieve after the battle of Thermopylae?
- b. Name *one* effect of the fire on the sailors.
- c. What *two* actions did the majority earnestly recommend?
- d. What reason did Themistocles give for objecting to these actions?
- e. What post did the Spartan king Eurybiades hold?
- f. What was his reaction to Themistocles' advice?
- g. According to Themistocles' message, what were the Greeks doing?
- h. What did he say Xerxes would gain by attacking at once?
- i. What harmful effect did Xerxes suffer in the battle because of his unfavorable position?
- j. To what does Nepos attribute Xerxes' defeat?

4. On the line at the right of *each* sentence below, write the *number* preceding the word or expression which, when inserted in the blank, makes the sentence grammatically correct. [6]

- a. Dux frūmentum dedit.

(1)nōs (2)ad nōs (3)nōbis (4)ad nōbis

a.....

- b. Rōmānī multa mīlia cēpērunt.
 (1)militum (2)militēs (3)ex militibus (4)militis b.....
- c. Caesar appellātus est.
 (1)imperātōrem (2)imperātōrī (3)imperātōre
 (4)imperātor c.....
- d. Nūntius convēnisse dixit.
 (1)virī (2)virō (3)virōs (4)virīs d.....
- e. Rōmānī servōrum nōn ūsī sunt.
 (1)auxilium (2)auxiliō (3)auxili (4)auxiliōrum e.....
- f. Puerī vocābantur.
 (1)mātre (2)mātre (3)mātris (4)ā mātre f.....
- g. Servi libertātem nōn poterant.
 (1)ut obtineant (2)ut obtinērent (3)obtinēt
 (4)obtinēre g.....
- h. Ego tam timidus eram ut
 (1)fūgī (2)fugerem (3)fugiam (4)fūgeram h.....
- i. Eques ad ducem prōcessit
 (1)ut praeium acciperet (2)ut praeium accipit
 (3)praeium accipere (4)praeium accēpisse i.....
- j. Imperātor scīvit quis
 (1)pervēnit (2)pervēnerat (3)pervēnisset (4)
 perveniat j.....
- k. Lēgātus imperāvit.
 (1)virīs ut castra ponerent (2)virīs ut castra po-
 nent (3)virōs ut castra ponerent (4)virōs castra
 ponere k.....
- l. Rōmānī nōn nocuērunt.
 (1)captīvos (2)captīvīs (3)captīvus (4)captī-
 vōrum l.....

5. Write *all* the specified forms, placing your answers on the lines at the right: [10]

- a-b. nominative plural of *id vulnus* a-b.....
- c-d. genitive singular of *difficile negotium* c-d.....
- e-f. accusative plural of *ego* e.....
 tū f.....
- g. vocative of *Sextus* g.....
- h-i. superlative nominative singular masculine of *pulcher* h.....
 similis i.....
- j-k. positive degree of the adverbs from *diligēns* j.....
 lātus k.....
- l. present imperative active second singular of *rogō* l.....
- m-n. future indicative passive third plural of *docēo* m.....
 mūniō n.....
- o-p. present indicative third singular of *adsum* o.....
 ūtor p.....
- q-r. imperfect indicative and subjunctive first plural of *eō* q.....
 r.....

s-t.	pluperfect subjunctive active and passive third	s.....
	singular of <i>dēfendō</i>	t.....

6. For *each* sentence below, write in column I a Latin word with which the italicized word is associated by derivation. Then, in column II, write the *number* preceding the word or expression below each sentence that best expresses the meaning of the italicized word. [8]

	Column I	Column II
[Illustration: The explanation was made in a very <i>amicable</i> manner.	amicus	3
(1)angry (2)belligerent (3)friendly (4)verbose		]
	Column I	Column II
a. He is <i>conserving</i> his strength for the next encounter.		
(1)testing (2)increasing (3)keeping		
(4)measuring	a.....	a.....
b. No further <i>concessions</i> will be requested.		
(1)reasons (2)penalties (3)explanations		
(4)privileges	b.....	b.....
c. <i>Exhort</i> him to leave.		
(1)Urge (2)Forbid (3)Compel		
(4)Command	c.....	c.....
d. That nation has made no <i>notable</i> contribution to science.		
(1)enduring (2)original (3)recent		
(4)outstanding	d.....	d.....
e. The prisoner seems to have a <i>dual</i> personality.		
(1)baffling (2)pleasing (3)double (4)dominant		
	e.....	e.....
f. <i>Consequently</i> , we shall remain here.		
(1)Therefore (2)Probably (3)Possibly		
(4)Positively	f.....	f.....
g. Mr. Reed is the <i>donor</i> of the new car.		
(1)winner (2)purchaser (3)driver (4)giver		
	g.....	g.....
h. She gives the impression of being habitually <i>frustrated</i> .		
(1)suspicious (2)defeated (3)exhausted		
(4)excited	h.....	h.....

7. On the line at the right of each of *ten* of the statements below, write the *number* preceding the word or expression that best completes the statement. [10]

a. During the Gallic Wars, Caesar invaded	(1)Britain	
(2)Spain (3)Ireland (4)Egypt		a.....

- b. The Gauls fought their last war with Caesar under the leadership of (1) Orgetorix (2) Ambiorix (3) Ariovistus (4) Vercingetorix b.....
- c. In Book I of *Dē Bellō Gallicō* Caesar describes the migration of the Helvetians and the (1) revolt of Aquitania (2) war with the Germans (3) invasion of Germany (4) war with the Belgians c.....
- d. Caesar's last words were said to have been (1) *Vēnī, vidī, vīcī* (2) *Alea iacta est* (3) *Carthāgō dēlenda est* (4) *Et tū, Brūte* d.....
- e. Caesar fought in a civil war against (1) Marius (2) Pompey (3) Octavian (4) Crassus e.....
- f. The number of men in a legion was generally about (1) 1,000 (2) 2,500 (3) 3,600 (4) 10,000 f.....
- g. The army's marching formation was called (1) *āgmen* (2) *exercitus* (3) *aciēs* (4) *ōrdō* g.....
- h. Caesar is credited with making improvements in the (1) clock (2) toga (3) sword (4) calendar h.....
- i. Rome's first government was (1) an oligarchy (2) a dictatorship (3) a monarchy (4) a republic i.....
- j. As a result of Caesar's wars, Rome left a great cultural heritage to (1) the Far East (2) France (3) Africa (4) Greece j.....
- k. One of Rome's important institutions was the public (1) bath (2) school system (3) postal system (4) museum k.....
- l. The Roman schoolboy studied Homer's (1) *Aeneid* (2) *Iliad* (3) *Argonauts* (4) *Anabasis* l.....
- m. A great inventor in Greek mythology was (1) Heracles (2) Midas (3) Daedalus (4) Mars m.....
- n. In the Roman Forum was located the (1) *Campus Martius* (2) *Colosseum* (3) *Via Sacra* (4) *Circus Maximus* n.....

LATIN—Two Years

Tuesday, June 19, 1962—1:15 to 4:15 p.m., only

Part 1

Translate each of the following passages into English. Write your translation in the space provided on the separate answer sheet.

[The story of the ten prisoners at Cannae.]

a. Post proelium *Cannēse* Hannibal decem ex nostris militibus quos cēperat, Rōmam misit. Imperāvit eis ut senātōribus Rōmānis dicerent Carthāginiēnsēs cum Rōmānis captivōs *permūtāre* velle. Priusquam profecti sunt, polliciti sunt sē reditūrōs esse in castra Hannibalis si Rōmāni captivōs nōn *permūtārent*.

Vēnerunt ad urbem Rōmam decem captivi. Nūtiāverunt quid Carthāginiēnsēs fieri vellent. Hoc senātōribus Rōmānis *grātum* nōn erat. Parentēs captivōrum magnō dolōre *affecti sunt*. Filiōs implōrābant nē ad hostēs redirent. Tum octō ex hīs captivis respondērunt sē *iūre iūrāndō* tenērī, et ad Hannibalem redierunt. Duo Rōmae mānsērunt et sē *iūre iūrāndō* liberātōs esse dicēbant. Omnēs Rōmāni existimābant captivōs qui mānsissent esse sine honōre et eis inimicissimī erant.

—Gellius, *Noctēs Atticae*, VI, 18 (adapted) [20]

Cannēse—of Cannae

permūtāre—exchange

grātum—acceptable, pleasing

affecti sunt—from *afficiō*—were afflicted

iūre iūrāndō—from *iūs iūrandum*—oath

[The Veneti, a coastal tribe of western Gaul, oppose the Romans.]

b. Auctōritās Venetōrum est longē amplissima omnis *ōrae maritimae*, quod Veneti nāvēs plūrimās habent et in Britanniam saepe nāvigant. Scientiā et ūsū rērum nauticarum cētērōs *antecēdunt*. In mari vāstō paucōs portūs tenent. Veneti etiam paene omnēs eōs qui eō mari prope finēs suōs ūtuntur *habent vectigālēs*.

Primō Silium et Velānium, lēgātōs Rōmānōs, *retinent* quod per eōs existimābant sē obsidēs quōs Crassō dedissent *recuperātūrōs esse*. Auctōritāte Venetōrum adducti, finitimī etiam lēgātōs *retinent*. Hī erant lēgāti quōs P. Crassus frūmentī obtinendī causā in complūrēs civitatēs dimiserat. Celeriter principēs reliquārum civitātum inter sē *coniūrant* atque cōfirmant sē Rōmānōrum servitūtem nōn *perlātūrōs esse*.

—Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō*, III, 8 (adapted) [20]

ōrae maritimae—from *ōra maritima*—coast

antecēdunt—surpass

habent vectigālēs—hold subject to tribute

retinent—from *retineō*—detain

recuperātūrōs esse—from *recuperō*—get back

coniūrant—conspire

perlātūrōs esse—from *perferō*—submit, endure

Part 2

Directions (1-10): In the space provided on a separate answer sheet, rewrite *each* of the following sentences, substituting for the italicized Latin term the grammatical form called for or the proper form of the expression in parentheses. *Make any other changes in each sentence that are required by the substitution*, but, unless the meaning is changed by the parenthetical instructions, be sure to retain the general idea of the original sentence. [10]

1. *Urbs ā cōsulibus fortibus dēfendētur.* (mūrus altus)
2. *Cōgō eum mēcum discēdere.* (Persuādeō)
3. *Diū in castris manēbant.* (Trēs hōrae)
4. *Dixit nāvēs in litore incēnsās esse.* (Dēmōnstrō ubi)
5. *Centum equitēs aderant.* (Duo milia)
6. *Cum proelium cōfectum esset, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit.* (ablative absolute)
7. *Domī labōrābat.* (Villa)
8. *Militēs castra posuērunt.* (passive voice)
9. *Socii ad Caesarem frūmentum portāvērunt.* (dō)
10. *Ad oppidum occupandum hostēs vērunt.* (ut clause)

Part 3

Directions (11-20): Read the following passage carefully, but do *not* write a translation. Below the passage you will find ten questions. For each question, select the alternative that best answers the question on the basis of the information given in the passage and write its *number* in the space provided on the line at the right. You may read the passage as many times as you wish. [20]

[Eporēdorix and Viridomarus kill the Roman garrison at Noviodonum, seize and destroy Caesar's stores and burn the town.]

Noviodūnum erat oppidum Haeduōrum ad ripās *Ligeris* flūminis idōneō locō positum. Ad hunc locum Caesar omnēs obsidēs Galliae, frūmentum, pecūniam publicam, impedimentōrum magnam partem contulerat. Ad eundem locum numerum equōrum comparātum huius bellī causā in Italiā et Hispaniā etiam miserat. Cum Eporēdorix Viridomarusque, socii Caesaris, eō vērissent cognōvērunt Haeduōs ad Vercingetorigem lēgātōs de pāce et amicitia mīsisse. Hanc occāsiōnem nōn neglegendam esse existimāvērunt.

Itaque interfectis Noviodūni praesidiis, hī viri pecūniam et equos inter se divisērunt. Effecērunt ut obsidēs civitātum ad magistratum in oppidum Bibracte dēdūcerentur. Oppidum Noviodūnum incendērunt quod ā se tenēri nōn posse iūdicābant. Quam maximum frūmentum nāvibus remōvērunt et reliquum aquā et incendiō dēlēvērunt. Ipsi ex finitimis regiōnibus cōpiās cōgere atque praesidia ad ripās *Ligeris* pōnere coepērunt. Equitatum omnibus locis timōris faciendī causā mīsērunt. Spērāverunt se ab rē frūmentariā Rōmānōs excludere posse quod flūmen eō tempore altissimum propter tempestātēs hiemis erat.

—Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō*, VII, 55 (adapted)

Ligeris—the Loire river

11. Caesar Noviodūnum iter fēcit quod (1)erat maximum
(2)locus bonus erat (3)Haeduōs timuit (4)frūmentum nōn
habēbat 11.....
12. Praeter (*except*) equōs, quot (*how many*) rēs Caesar
Noviodūnum cōgerat? (1)trēs (2)quattuor (3)sex (4)septem 12.....
13. Caesar equōs comparāverat ut (1)bellum gereret
(2)frūmentum portāret (3)pācem faceret (4)salūtem quaereret 13.....
14. Etsi Eporēdorix et Viridomārus erant socii Caesaris, tamen
(1)fidem Caesaris nōn servāverunt (2)auxilium incolis Noviodūni
dedērunt (3)Haeduōs ad Vercingetorīgem miserunt (4)Caesarem
interfēcērunt 14.....
15. Eporēdorix et Viridomārus pecūniam inter sē divīsērunt
postquam (1)magistrātus dēduxērunt (2)nāvēs remōvērunt
(3)regiōnēs vāstāverunt (4)praesidia occidērunt 15.....
16. Obsidēs Galliae quōs Caesar cēperat ab Eporēdorige Viri-
domārōque (1)interfecti sunt (2)ad magistrātum missi sunt
(3)arma capere coacti sunt (4)ad nāvēs remōti sunt 16.....
17. Eporēdorix et Viridomārus oppidum incendērunt quod
(1)civēs Noviodūni ipsōs ad Caesarem trādere voluērunt (2)magi-
strātus hoc iussērunt (3)auxiliō Caesarī esse voluērunt (4)difficile
id dēfendere erat 17.....
18. Hi viri magnam partem frūmenti (1)Caesarī dedērunt
(2)in nāvibus posuērunt (3)ad Vercingetorīgem portāverunt
(4)Bibracte tulērunt 18.....
19. Eporēdorix et Viridomārus cōpiās cōgērunt quās (1)fini-
timī sibi dederant (2)ex omnibus locis cēperant (3)Rōmāni
miserant (4)ad ripās Ligeris viderant 19.....
20. Eporēdorix et Viridomārus spērāverunt (1)flūmen Ligerem
altissimum esse (2)tempestātēs futūrās esse (3)Rōmānos rem
frūmentāriam nōn habitūrōs esse (4)Rōmānos equitatum missūrōs
esse 20.....

Part 4

Directions (21-30): On the line at the right, write the *number* of the word or expression which, when inserted in the blank, makes *each* sentence grammatically correct. [10]

21. Gallī rogāverunt cūr Caesar auxilium nōn
(1)tulisset (2)tulerat (3)tulisse (4)tulit 21.....
22. Labiēnus tempestātem nūtiāvit.
(1)ad ducem (2)duce (3)ducī (4)ducis 22.....
23. Militēs fugitivōs nōn poterant.
(1)ut caperent (2)capere (3)cēpisse (4)ad capiendum 23.....
24. Lēgātus dixit legiōnēs pontem fortiter
(1)dēfendisse (2)dēfendēbant (3)dēfenderent (4)dē-
fendissent 24.....

- | | |
|---|---------|
| 25. Haedui iter faciēbant.
(1) in eō diē (2) ei diēi (3) in eum diem (4) eō diē | 25..... |
| 26. Imperator collem munivit caperetur.
(1) non (2) ne (3) quin (4) neque | 26..... |
| 27. Miles, cum hostes, cucurrit.
(1) videat (2) videbit (3) vidisset (4) videre | 27..... |
| 28. Caesar tribunum praefecit.
(1) legionēs (2) legionem (3) legione (4) legioni | 28..... |
| 29. Puer ad Graeciam navigavit ad urbēs clārās
(1) videndās (2) videret (3) videre (4) videnda | 29..... |
| 30. Rex, mihi locutus est.
(1) suum (2) ipsum (3) se (4) ipse | 30..... |

Part 5

Directions (31-40): For *each* sentence below, write in column I a Latin word with which the italicized word is associated by derivation. Then in column II write the *number* preceding the word or expression that best expresses the meaning of the italicized word. [10]

- | | Column
I | Column
II |
|--|------------------|--------------|
| [<i>Illustration:</i> The explanation was made in a very
<i>amicable</i> manner.
(1) angry (2) belligerent (3) friendly (4) verbose | amicus
.....] | 3
.....] |
| | Column
I | Column
II |
| 31. An eagle's nest is usually <i>inaccessible</i> .
(1) very high (2) difficult to reach (3) difficult to see (4) indestructible | 31..... | |
| 32. The department store allows <i>deductions</i> on the customer's bills under certain conditions.
(1) increases (2) adjustments (3) discounts (4) postponements | 32..... | |
| 33. The Justice Department <i>interrogated</i> the suspected enemy agents.
(1) questioned (2) arrested (3) investigated (4) fingerprinted | 33..... | |
| 34. <i>Conservation</i> of forest regions will help prevent land erosion.
(1) Exploitation (2) Protection (3) Augmentation (4) Restriction | 34..... | |
| 35. The Secretary of State called the ambassador's note a <i>provocation</i> to war.
(1) commitment (2) deterrent (3) step (4) challenge | 35..... | |
| 36. The facts which you mention are not <i>pertinent</i> to this case.
(1) prejudicial (2) suitable (3) important (4) related | 36..... | |

37. The museum fire caused *irreparable* loss.
 (1) minor (2) irrelative (3) irremediable
 (4) much 37.....
38. Failure to file the proper papers *invalidated* his claim to the estate.
 (1) nullified (2) strengthened (3) delayed
 (4) sealed 38.....
39. Expansion and *contraction* of concrete roads have been engineering problems.
 (1) shrinking (2) surfacing (3) drying (4) erosion 39.....
40. A wise man maintains his *composure*.
 (1) wealth (2) reputation (3) power (4) calmness 40.....

Part 6

Directions (41-55): In the following passage fifteen words or expressions are italicized and repeated in the questions below. Choose *ten* questions. Write on the line at the right the *number* of the alternative that best explains each of these *ten* words or expressions as it is used in the passage.

[10]

Like that of several other nations, the history of Rome began with a legend. According to that legend, a *great city* in Asia Minor was once besieged and captured by the Greeks by means of the *now-famous trick*. A *warrior* of that city escaped and sailed to Italy where he settled. *One of his descendants*, according to tradition, *eventually* founded Rome and became its first king.

Under the succeeding line of kings the tiny state flourished, until *one of the kings* by his tyrannical rule so enraged the citizens that they rose up and expelled him. At this time the Romans adopted a *new form of government* with *two officials* elected annually holding the highest political office, and kept this form for nearly five hundred years. At first there were serious class conflicts. The *aristocrats* bullied the *poorer class*, allowing its members no share in the government. With the passage of time, however, the poorer class did win many of the rights and privileges of the richer Roman citizens.

In their external struggles the Roman subdued one neighbor after another; they completely destroyed their most *formidable enemies* in a series of wars called the Punic Wars. Great glory now came to the city, and *Jupiter* looked down from the *Capitoline* upon the yearly Saturnalia. Soon he was to hear the proclamation *vēnī, vidī, vicī* and see the *first emperor* assume the supreme power of Rome.

41. *great city*
 (1) Miletus (2) Troy (3) Ephesus (4) Damascus 41.....
42. *now-famous trick*
 (1) Greek fire (2) wooden horse (3) spiked chariot
 (4) smoke screen 42.....
43. *warrior*
 (1) Aeneas (2) Hector (3) Achilles (4) Hercules 43.....
44. *One of his descendants*
 (1) Ascanius (2) Romulus (3) Anchises (4) Ulysses 44.....

45. *eventually*
 (1)1000 B.C. (2)850 B.C. (3)753 B.C. (4)500 B.C. 45.....
46. *one of the kings*
 (1)Midas (2)Xerxes (3)Alexander the Great
 (4)Tarquin the Proud 46.....
47. *new form of government*
 (1)monarchy (2)fascism (3)republic (4)communism 47.....
48. *two officials*
 (1)consuls (2)praetors (3)tribunes (4)censors 48.....
49. *aristocrats*
 (1)equitēs (2)patricians (3)novī hominēs (4)merchants 49.....
50. *poorer class*
 (1)hostages (2)senators (3)slaves (4)plebeians 50.....
51. *formidable enemies*
 (1)Greeks (2)Macedonians (3)Germans (4)Carthaginians 51.....
52. *Jupiter*
 (1)king of the gods (2)first king of Rome (3)god of war
 (4)Roman general 52.....
53. *Capitoline*
 (1)one of the temples (2)senate house (3)one of the
 hills of Rome (4)one of the palaces in Rome 53.....
54. *vēnī, vidī, vicī*
 (1)Brutus's cry after the assassination of Caesar (2)Caesar's
 last words (3)Caesar's message of victory (4)Pompey's
 announcement from Pharsalia 54.....
55. *first emperor*
 (1)Augustus (2)Antony (3)Trajan (4)Hadrian 55.....

LATIN—Two Years

Tuesday, June 18, 1963—1:15 to 4:15 p.m., only

Part I

Translate each of the following passages into English. Write your translation in the space provided on a separate answer sheet.

[Caesar and Pompey contend for supreme power.]

a. Caesar victor à Galliā rediit et secundum *consulātum* postulāre coepit. Eō accepto sine ullā pugnā, Mārcellus cōsul et alii senātōrēs contrā rem locūtī sunt atque, dimissis exercitibus, eum ad urbem redire iussērunt. Cum milites suos cōgisset, Caesar tamen ā mūnitiōnibus profectus est atque contrā patriam cum exercitū vēnit. Cōsulēs cum Pompeiō senātōribusque ex urbe in Graeciam iūgērunt. Ad eum locum Caesar properāvit atque, primō proeliō commissō, in fugam datus est. Incolumis tamen erat quod Pompeius eum noctū sequi nōluit et Caesar Pompeium potestātem vincendi āmisisse dixit. Posteā Pompeius, cum superārētur, petiuit ut ā rēge Aegypti auxilium acciperet. Ille rēx, fortunās suās sequēns, Pompeium occidit et caput eius ad Caesarem misit.

—Eutropius, *Historiae Rōmānae Breviārium*, VI, 19-21 (adapted) [20]
cōsulātum—consulship

[Curio addresses his soldiers in North Africa
and urges them to be loyal to Caesar.]

b. Cūriō, conciliō militum convocātō, nārrat quōmodo Caesar ita ūsus sit eōrum studiō *ad Corfinium* ut magnam partem Italiae beneficio atque auctoritate eōrum ad se dūxerit. "Omnēs civitatēs," inquit, "vōs et vestrum factum secūtae sunt. Propter hoc, Pompeius, nūllō proeliō pulsus, ex Italiā excessit. Caesar, me, quem sibi *cārisimum* habuit, et prōvinciās, Siciliam atque Africam, vestrae fidei commisit.

"At sunt ei qui vōs moneant ut nōs relinquātis. Quid enim magis cupiunt quam ūnō tempore et nos circumvenire et vōs magnō *maleficiō* tenere? Vōs autem, incertā victoriā, Caesarem secuti estis: vōsne iam Pompeium bellī fortunā victum sequēmini?"

Quā orātiōne permōti, milites Cūriōnem cohortantur nē dubitet impetum facere et suam fidem virtutemque sentire.

—Caesar, *Dē Bellō Civiī*, II, 32-33 (adapted) [20]

ad Corfinium—near Corfinium

cārisimum—from *cārus*, dear

maleficiū—crime

Part II

Directions (1-10): On a separate answer sheet, rewrite *completely each* of the following sentences, substituting for the italicized Latin term the grammatical form called for or the proper form of the expression in parentheses. *Make any other changes in each sentence that are required by the substitution*, but, unless the meaning is changed by the parenthetical instructions, be sure to retain the general idea of the original sentence. [10]

1. *Militibus imperat ut maneant.* (iubeō)
2. *Ulixēs ad silvā iit ad cibum inveniendum.* (ut purpose clause)
3. *Mārcus frātribus parvīs fābulam nārat.* (direct address and imperative)
4. *Dux respondit, "Militēs nostrī bene pugnāverunt."* (indirect statement)
5. *Fossa est minima.* (Castra)
6. *Multitūdō ā Germāniā Romam vēnerat.* (prōvincia)
7. *Frūmentum ā sociīs parātum erat.* (active voice)
8. *Hannibal ibi morārī nōluit.* (eī finēs)
9. *Caesar, ubi legiōnēs instrūxit, impetum fēcit.* (cum circumstantial clause)
10. *Mox ad Graeciam pervēnit.* (Posterus diēs)

Part III

Directions (11-20): Read the following passage carefully, but do *not* write a translation. Below the passage you will find ten incomplete statements. Select the answer that best completes *each* statement *on the basis of the information given in the passage* and write its number in the space provided. [20]

[The rivalry and brave deeds of two centurions]

Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus, quī perpetuās contrōversiās habebant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnitiōnēs pugnāretur, "Quid dubitās," inquit, "Vorēne? Quam opportunitātem probandae tuae virtutis expectās? Hic diēs dē nostris contrōversis iudicābit."

Haec cum dixisset prōcēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs et in eam partem hostium quae dēnsa visa est currit.

Veritus opiniōnem omnium, Vorēnus in vāllō nōn remanet sed eum statim sequitur. Spatiō relictō, Pullō pilum in hostēs coniecit atque unum ex multitūdine Gallōrum currentem vulnerat: hunc scūtis dēfendunt hostēs; in illum (Pullōnem) universi tela coniciunt neque eī facultātem prōgrediendi dant. Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōnis et telum in *balteum* conicitur. Hic cāsus arma vertit; gladium ēdūcere nōn potest et sic hostēs eum circumstant. Inimicus Vorēnus contendit ad auxilium eī dandum. Statim omnis multitūdō ad eum ā Pullōne currit. Illum (Pullōnem) enim telō trānsfixum arbitrantur.

Gladiō pūnat Vorēnus atque, unō interfectō, reliquos paulum pellit; dum persequatur cupidius in locum inferiōrem deicitur. Vorēnō circumventō, nunc eī auxilium fert Pullō, atque, duo virī incolumēs, complūribus interfectis, summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnitiōnes recipiunt.

—Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō*, V, 44 (adapted)

balteum—belt

11. T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus erant duo militēs quī (1)oppidum mūniebant (2)rem frūmentāriam cōferēbant (3)inter se pug-nābant (4)dē hostibus iudicābant

12. Pullō rogāvit Vorēnum cūr (1)nōn in vāllō mānsisset (2)aciem hostium explōrāvisset (3)ducem legiōnis expectāret (4)nōn fortitūdinem ostenderet 12.....
13. Pullō sē Vorēnō virtūte praestāre demonstrāre volēbat (1)pugnandō hostēs (2)loquendō magnopere (3)rogandō ducem (4)eum interficiendō 13.....
14. Cum Pullō in proelium properāret, Vorēnus eum, subitō cōsecūtus est quod (1)ei pilum dare volēbat (2)dux ita imperāvit (3)timēbat quid omnēs sentirent (4)eum amābat 14.....
15. Tēlum in hostēs ā Pullōne iactum (1)militēs reppulit (2)virōs terruit (3)Vorēnum vulnerāvit (4)Gallō nocuit 15.....
16. Post impetum hostium, Pullō nōn poterat (1)procedere contrā hostēs (2)pedem referre (3)balteum invenire (4)multitūdinem vidēre 16.....
17. Pullō nōn sē dēfendēbat cum (1)vulnerātus esset (2)arma sua amīsisset (3)territus esset (4)armīs suis uti nōn posset 17.....
18. Hostēs Vorēnum persecūtī sunt quod (1)Pullōnem vulnerātum esse crēdebant (2)Pullō ex multitūdine currēbat (3)ille scūtum Pullōni dābat (4)ille gladium nōn habēbat 18.....
19. Cum Vorēnus in periculō esset (1)Pullō intrā munitiōnēs sē recēpit (2)Pullō ei auxilium dedit (3)militēs Rōmāni ex castris cucurrerunt (4)Galli eum laudāverunt 19.....
20. Postquam duo centuriōnēs in castra redierunt (1)erant iniūciōrēs quam prius (2)ab omnibus laudāti sunt (3)donā eis data sunt (4)vulnera eōrum cūrāta sunt 20.....

Part IV

Directions (21-30): In the space provided, write the *number* of the word or expression which, when inserted in the blank, makes *each* sentence grammatically correct. [10]

21. Ariovistus Germānōrum dēlēctus est. (1)ducem (2)ducis (3)ducī (4)dux 21.....
22. Helvētiī mūrū fēcērunt (1)sē dēfendere (2)ut sē dēfendant (3)sē dēfendisse (4)ut sē dēfenderent 22.....
23. Caesar Labiēnum praefēcit. (1)virī (2)virōrum (3)virīs (4)virōs 23.....
24. Caesar rediit. (1)ad domum (2)domī (3)domum (4)domū 24.....
25. Bibulus persuāsit ut fortiter pugnārent. (1)nautārum (2)nautīs (3)nautās (4)nautae 25.....
26. Explōrātōrēs in castris remānsērunt. (1)multī diēs (2)multōs diēs (3)multis diēbus (4)multōrum diērum 26.....
27. Sēquanī proximī erant. (1)Belgīs (2)ad Belgās (3)Belgārum (4)in Belgās 27.....
28. Nōn audīvit urbem ab hostibus. (1)captus esse (2)captum esse (3)captam esse (4)capta esse 28.....
29. Dominus praemia dedit. (1)servī (2)servīs (3)ad servōs (4)servōs 29.....
30. Germānī per iter fēcērunt. (1)montēs (2)montibus (3)monte (4)montium 30.....

Part V

Directions (31-40): For *each* sentence below, write in column I on a separate answer sheet a Latin word with which the italicized word is associated by derivation. Then in column II write the *number* preceding the word or expression that best expresses the meaning of the italicized word. [10]

Illustration: The explanation was made in a very *amicable* manner.

(1)angry (2)belligerent (3)friendly (4)verbose

Column I
amicus

Column II
(3)

31. The members of the school board were convinced that their actions were *legitimate*. (1)lawful (2)unprecedented (3)illegal (4)restricted

32. The *brevity* of the official's reply was cause for concern. (1)extensiveness (2)indirectness (3)shortness (4)effectiveness

33. The lawyer made a *cogent* statement of the facts. (1)lengthy (2)forceful (3)weak (4)witty

34. The young research assistant took *copious* notes on the experiments. (1)meager (2)interesting (3)abundant (4)significant

35. The *emissary* disembarked on the evening of August 3. (1)alien (2)envoy (3)immigrant (4)emigrant

36. The United Nations *convened* to consider sanctions against several nations. (1)refused (2)retired (3)agreed (4)assembled

37. The serum was declared *impotent* by the scientists. (1)harmful (2)effective (3)venomous (4)powerless

38. A disease in its *incipient* stage is often difficult to diagnose. (1)final (2)initial (3)secondary (4)tertiary

39. It is *imperative* for the students to follow directions. (1)necessary (2)proper (3)impertinent (4)impossible

40. The astronaut's report *confirmed* many spatial theories. (1)expanded (2)described (3)verified (4)contradicted

Part VI

Directions (41-55): Of the following fifteen italicized words or expressions select *ten*. In the spaces provided write the *number* of the alternative that best explains the italicized word or expression as it is used in the passage. [10]

The Mediterranean Sea, to which the Romans gave a special *name*, reflects in its stories and legends the modes of thought of four great national cultures. Upon entering it through the Strait of Gibraltar, one sees why the ancients associated the Rock of Gibraltar with the notion of a *divinity* supporting the sky. From here Mercury, winged *rod* in hand, is said to have flown from the lofty *mountain* which was the home of the gods, to Carthage, where he urged Aeneas to *accomplish his mission*.

Mercury's flight was over Mediterranean waters on which some boats were carrying grain to the *City of the Caesars*; others, sped by *three banks of oars*, were bringing apes and peacocks from ancient Nineveh. Centuries later there glided over these waters the silver and purple

sailboat of an *Oriental queen* whose beauty nearly deprived Rome of all the advantage once gained by Scipio's defeat of his *greatest adversary* and whose story has been given to us in motion pictures. Through these waters the *Greek hero* who struggled for many years to reach his native city and who has become the symbol of all homing travelers and spacemen steered his ships.

The Mediterranean was perilous as well as beautiful, and the lively imagination of the ancients led them to regard the whirlpools and rocks between Sicily and Italy as *monsters* to which mariners fell prey. They saw storms as the work of a *god opening a huge bag of winds*, or of Neptune roughening the waters by a *device* symbolically his own. This imagination led to the conviction that man alone does not shape his own destiny but is partially dependent upon the gods. Such a belief is revealed in the Romans' use of small images representing the *guardian gods of the household*. To these statues the *head of the family* made ceremonial offerings.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|---------|
| 41. name | (1) <i>mare magnum</i> (2) <i>mare nostrum</i> (3) <i>mare rēgāle</i>
(4) <i>mare nāvīgābile</i> | 41..... |
| 42. divinity | (1) <i>Iuppiter</i> (2) <i>Mārs</i> (3) <i>Vulcānus</i> (4) <i>Atlās</i> | 42..... |
| 43. rod | (1) <i>cādūceus</i> (2) <i>aquila</i> (3) <i>signum</i> (4) <i>fascēs</i> | 43..... |
| 44. mountain | (1) <i>Vesuvius</i> (2) <i>Aetna</i> (3) <i>Olympus</i> (4) <i>Īda</i> | 44..... |
| 45. accomplish his mission | (1)build a fleet (2)visit the underworld (3)found a new
city (4)unite with the Carthaginians | 45..... |
| 46. City of the Caesars | (1) <i>Rōma</i> (2) <i>Athēnae</i> (3) <i>Tarsus</i> (4) <i>Tyrus</i> | 46..... |
| 47. three banks of oars | (1) <i>nāvēs longae</i> (2) <i>trirēmēs</i> (3) <i>nāvēs plānae</i> (4) <i>quin-
querēmēs</i> | 47..... |
| 48. Oriental queen | (1) <i>Didō</i> (2) <i>Octāvia</i> (3) <i>Andromachē</i> (4) <i>Cleopātra</i> | 48..... |
| 49. greatest adversary | (1) <i>Cȳrus</i> (2) <i>Alexander</i> (3) <i>Hannibal</i> (4) <i>Pyrrhus</i> | 49..... |
| 50. Greek hero | (1) <i>Ājax</i> (2) <i>Hector</i> (3) <i>Paris</i> (4) <i>Ulixēs</i> | 50..... |
| 51. monsters | (1) <i>Minōtaurus et Thēseus</i> (2) <i>Scylla et Charybdis</i>
(3) <i>Bellerophōn et Pēgasus</i> (4) <i>Charōn et Cerberus</i> | 51..... |
| 52. god opening a huge bag of winds | (1) <i>Orpheus</i> (2) <i>Zephyrus</i> (3) <i>Pān</i> (4) <i>Aeolus</i> | 52..... |
| 53. device | (1)trident (2)thunderbolt (3)lyre (4)arrow | 53..... |
| 54. guardian gods of the household | (1) <i>Penātēs</i> (2) <i>Cyclōpēs</i> (3) <i>Tītānī</i> (4) <i>Mūsae</i> | 54..... |
| 55. head of the family | (1) <i>pontifex maximus</i> (2) <i>pater familiās</i> (3) <i>pater
patriae</i> (4) <i>rēx sacrōrum</i> | 55..... |

LATIN II

Wednesday, June 17, 1964—1:15 to 4:15 p.m., only

Part I

Translate each of the following passages into English. Write your translation in the space provided in the separate answer booklet.

[How the Carthaginian Hannibal jested at the expense of King Antiochus.]

a. In libris antiquarum fabularum scriptum est Hannibalem Carthaginensem regi Antiochō *iocōsē* locutus esse. Erat fabula huius modi: Antiochus ei ostendebat in campō cōpiās maximās quās ad bellum gerendum contrā populum Rōmānum comparāverat; ille *vertēbat* milites quī insignia clāra ferēbant; dūcēbat etiam currūs et elephantōs et equitēs. Atque ibi rēx, cōspectū tantī ac bene armātī exercitūs *gaudēns*, Hannibalem spectāvit et dīxit, "Putāsne haec omnia satis esse Rōmānis?"

Tum Hannibal respondit, "Crēdō haec omnia satis esse Rōmānis etsī cupidissimī sunt."

Nihil tam *iocōsē* et tam ācriter dīcī potest; rēx dē magnitūdine exercitūs rogāverat sed Hannibal dē *praedā* locutus est.

—Aulus Gellius, *Noctēs Atticae*, V, 5 (adapted) [20]

iocōsē—jokingly

vertēbat—from *vertō*, maneuver

gaudēns—from *gaudeō*, rejoice

praedā—from *praeda*, booty

[Octavian defeats Antony and Cleopatra at the Battle of Actium 31 B.C. and becomes sole ruler of the Roman world.]

b. Antōnius, quī Asiam et Orientem tenēbat, *repudiātā* sorōre Octāviānī, Cleopātram, rēginam Aegyptī, in mātirimōnium dūxit. Tum hic magnum bellum cīvile commōvit, ā fēminā Cleopātrā āctus, quae volēbat etiam Rōmā in urbe regere. Victus est ab Octāviānō nāvālī pugnā clārā ad Actium, quod est locus in Epīrō. Ex hāc regiōne fūgit in Aegyptum et, *dēspērātis rēbus*, cum omnēs ad Octāviānum trānsīrent, ipse sē interfēcit. Cleopatra *serpentem* ad sēsē *applicāvit* et mortua est. Itaque, bellis in tōtis terris cōfectis, Octāviānus Romam rediit et sōlus XLIV annōs potestātem tenuit.

—Eutropius, *Historiae Rōmānae Breviārium*, VII 6, 7, 8 (adapted) [20]

repudiātā—from *repudiō*, divorce

dēspērātis rēbus = *spē āmissā*

serpentem—from *serpens*, snake

applicāvit—from *applicō*, apply

Part II

Directions (1-10): On a separate answer sheet, rewrite *completely* each of the following sentences, substituting for the italicized Latin term the grammatical form called for or the proper form of the expression in parentheses. *Make any other changes in each sentence that are required by the substitution*, but, unless the meaning is changed by the parenthetical instructions, be sure to retain the general idea of the original sentence. [10]

1. *Aedificium* ab hostibus occupatum est. (plural)
2. Imperator hostes cum *difficultate* interfecit. (gladius)
3. *Cum oppidum captum esset*, equites fugerunt. (ablative absolute)
4. Puer *librum* suum vidit. (mater)
5. Terror *erat* tantus ut consul non veniret. (present tense)
6. Cives boni in foro *adsunt*. (singular)
7. Ducēs pecuniam regi *dedērunt*. (portō)
8. Rōmānī in proelio *fortiter* pugnāverunt. (superlative)
9. *Diū* agricolae in insulā laborābant. (Multi annī)
10. Homō *pro* Pompeiō locutus est. (contra)

Part III

Directions (11-20): Read the following passage carefully, but do *not* write a translation. Below the passage you will find ten questions or incomplete statements. Each statement or question is followed by four suggested answers numbered 1 through 4. Select the answer that best completes *each on the basis of the information given in the passage* and write its *number* on the line to the right. [20]

Erant in equitibus Caesaris duo frātrēs quōrum auxiliō Caesar omnibus Gallicis bellis ūsus erat. Eis Caesar multos honores et multa praemia dederat. Hi frātrēs, autem, stipendium equitum capiebant et id sibi retinebant. Hōc ā militibus nūtiātō, Caesar frātrēs castigāvit. Poenā adducti, cōstituērunt discēdere ad exercitum Pompei. Ante id tempus nēmō aut miles aut eques ā Caesare ad Pompeium trāsierat, cum paene cotidie pauci milites ā Pompeiō ad Caesarem fugerent. Sed duo frātrēs, qui omnia dē exercitū Caesaris intellegēbant, omnia haec ad Pompeium dētulerunt. Quibus rēbus cognitis, Pompeius mediā nocte dūxit cohortēs LX ad eam partem mūnitiōnum quae pertinēbant ad mare et ā castris Caesaris longissimē aberant. Eōdem nāvēs longās misit et quid fieri vellet dēmōstrāvit.

—Caesar, *Dē Bellō Civīli*, III, 59-62 (adapted)

11. Caesar hōs duos frātrēs laudāvit quod (1)duo fortēs pedītēs erant (2)Caesari tantum subsidium dederant (3)erant Rōmānī (4)erant ducēs Gallicī 11.....
12. Multa dona data erant (1)omnibus equitibus (2)Caesari (3)duobus frātribus (4)Gallis 12.....
13. Duo frātrēs erant nōn honesti quod (1)hostibus nāvēs dabant (2)Caesari pecuniam dederunt (3)pecuniam militum occupābant (4)Caesari impetum Gallōrum nūtiāverunt 13.....

14. Militēs dixērunt (1)hōs frātrēs pecūniam capere (2)pedi-
tēs pecūniam sibi retinēre (3)Caesarem duās puellās castigāvisse
(4)sē stipendiō addūcī 14.....
15. Frātrēs ob poenam permōtī (1)dūxērunt exercitum ad
Pompeium (2)statuērunt ad Pompeium ire (2)militibus hoc
nūntiāvērunt (4)cōstituērunt hoc nautis nūntiāre 15.....
16. Quid ante id tempus acciderat? (1)Et mīles et eques ad
Pompeium trānsierant. (2)Nēmō ā Pompeiō discesserat. (3)Nēmō
ad Caesarem trānsierat. (4)Neque mīles neque eques ad exercitum
Pompeī ierat. 16.....
17. Quid aliquī militēs saepe agēbant? (1)Omnia dē auxiliō
sociōrum intellegēbant. (2)Omnia ad Pompeium dēferēbant.
(3)Ā Caesare ad mare fugiēbant. (4)Ā Pompeiō ad Caesarem
properābant. 17.....
18. Duo frātres cognōverant (1)multās rēs dē cōpiis Caesaris
(2)nihil dē exercitū Caesaris (3)paulum dē classe Pompeī
(4)omnia dē equitatū Pompeī 18.....
19. Virī Pompeī ad mūnitiōnēs appropinquāvērunt quae erant
(1)circum collem (2)longē ā marī (3)remōtae ā castris
(4)prope castra 19.....
20. Classe missā, Pompeius (1)epistolam Caesarī scripsit
(2)meridiē nāvigāvit (3)lēgātōs exspectāvit (4)cōnsilia nūnti-
āvit 20.....

Part IV

Directions (21-30): On the line to the right, write the *number* of the word or expression which, when inserted in the blank, makes *each* sentence grammatically correct. [10]

21. Magister . . . librum dedit. (1)ad puerōs (2)ad puerum
(3)puerō (4)puerum 21.....
22. Filius senātōris . . . ad forum ambulāvit. (1)cum mātře
(2)mātře (3)mātrī (4)mātribus 22.....
23. Diū . . . fuit. (1)villā (2)in villam (3)villam (4)in villā 23.....
24. Princeps per . . . cōpiās dūxit. (1)silvās (2)silvis
(3)silvae (3)silvārum 24.....
25. Gladius . . . est. (1)mē (2)ego (3)meī (4)mihi 25.....
26. Militēs sunt cupidī . . . (1)pecūnia (2)pecūniae
(3)pecūniā (4)pecūniam 26.....
27. Ita bene castra mūnita erant ut expugnārī nōn . . .
(1)poterant (2)potuisse (3)posse (4)possent 27.....
28. Caesar . . . factus est. (1)imperātōris (2)imperātōrī
(3)imperātor (4)imperātōre 28.....

29. Caesar quaestōrem . . . praefēcit. (1)nāve (2)nāvī
(3)nāvem (4)nāvēs 29.....
30. Puer dixit sē . . . (1)laudātum esse (2)laudātus esset
(3)laudātus esse (4)laudātum esset

Part V

Directions (31-40): For *each* sentence below, write on the line at the right a Latin word with which the italicized word is associated by derivation. Then on the second line write the *number* preceding the word or expression that best expresses the meaning of the italicized word. [10]

Illustration: The explanation was made in a very *amicable* manner. (1)angry (2)belligerent (3)friendly (4)verbose *amicus*
.....3.....1

31. In the light of the evidence, your opinion about the crime is *tenable*. (1)startling (2)valid (3)unjustifiable (4)absurd 31.....

32. The clerk made a swift *tabulation* of the goods on his counter. (1)packaging (2)listing (3)disposal (4)sale 32.....

33. During the Christmas rush, the manager *augmented* the staff of the store. (1)increased (2)praised (3)improved (4)trained 33.....

34. We need to *verify* these statements. (1)reverse (2)prove (3>nullify (4)simplify 34.....

35. The preacher's presentation was clear and his tone was *hortatory*. (1)persuasive (2)raucous (3)gentle (4)halting 35.....

36. In the entire discussion he maintained an attitude that was *nonpartisan*. (1)prejudiced (2)interested (3)neutral (4)hesitating 36.....

37. The *nascent* buds showed themselves in the warm sunlight. (1)fuzzy (2)soft (3)multicolored (4)new 37.....

38. The man was afflicted with a *mortal* disease. (1)fatal (2)contagious (3)common (4)rare 38.....

39. The football player *intercepted* the forward pass. (1)threw (2)watched (3)caught (4)aimed 39.....

40. Most business enterprises believe in *advertisements*. (1)low prices (2)publicity (3)large profits (4)quality 40.....

Part VI

Directions (41-55): Select *ten* of the following statements or questions. In the space provided on the line to the right, write the *number* of the word or expression which best completes the statement or answers the question. [10]

41. A Roman race track similar to the modern trotting race track was the (1)*Forum* (2)*Circus Maximus* (3)*Colossēum* (4)*Via Aurēlia* 41.....
42. The people who gave Rome its last kings were the (1)*Galli* (2)*Samnītes* (3)*Carthaginienses* (4)*Etrusci* 42.....
43. The Roman deity who was the guardian of the doorways was (1)*Iānus* (2)*Iūno* (3)*Iuppiter* (4)*Diāna* 43.....
44. Hercules had twelve labors, one of which was the (1)procuring of the Golden Fleece (2)killing of the Nemean lion (4)abduction of Proserpina (4)rescue of Eurydice 44.....
45. The Punic Wars refer to the wars between Rome and (1)Gaul (2)Greece (3)Carthage (4)Britain 45.....
46. Who was Gaul's great unifying national leader? (1)*Diviciācus* (2)*Vercingetorix* (3)*Viridomārus* (4)*Dumnorix* 46.....
47. Maintaining a sufficient food supply for the Roman populace was the special duty of a Roman official called the (1)*cōsul* (2)*haruspex* (3)*aedilis* (4)*centuriō* 47.....
48. The people who kept records of population growth were known as (1)*praetōrēs* (2)*līctōrēs* (3)*praefecti* (4)*censōrēs* 48.....
49. Ancient counterparts of our ticker-tape processions were (1)*Cursūs Olympici* (2)*Cursūs curruum* (3)*Triumphī* (4)*Sāturnālia* 49.....
50. Caesar's death occurred in (1) 44 B.C. (2) 100 B.C. (3) 58 B.C. (4) 31 B.C. 50.....
51. An offensive device used by Caesar was called (1)*vāllum* (2)*fossa* (3)*calceus* (4)*ballista* 51.....
52. The famed sons of the Roman Cornelia were the (1)*Tarquīnī* (2)*Gracchī* (3)*Horātīi* (4)*Crassī* 52.....
53. The rear guard of the Roman army was called (1)*aciēs* (2)*cornū* (3)*prīmum agmen* (4)*novissimum agmen* 53.....
54. When the Romans spoke of the Ides of March, they referred to the (1) 1st (2) 7th (3) 15th (4) 13th 54.....
55. A man who would be considered a member of our middle class, in Roman times would have been part of the (1)*Optimātēs* (2)*Equitēs* (3)*Plēbēs* (4)*Senātōrēs* 55.....

LATIN II

Monday, June 21, 1965—1:15 to 4:15 p.m., only

Part I

Translate each of the following passages into English. Write your translation on a separate sheet of paper.

[A story of the bravery and sacrifice of Regulus]

a. Regulō captō, *Carthāginiēnsēs* petivērunt ut ille ad urbem Rōmam proficiscerētur et pācem ā Rōmānīs obtinēret et *permūtātiōnem* captivōrum faceret. Regulus cum Rōmam venisset, in senātū dixit nihil quod Rōmānī exspectābant. Nūntiāvit sē Rōmānum nōn esse, cum in potestāte hostium esset. Itaque senātui persuāsit nē pācem cum Carthāginiēnsibus faceret; dixit hostēs spem nūllam habēre; atque monuit senātōrēs nē multa milia captivōrum *propter sē* redderentur. Dixit: "Ego *Rōmae* nōn remanēbō, cum in urbe honōrem nōbilis cīvis habēre nōn possim." Revertit ad Africam et postea interfectus est.

—Eutropius, *Historiae Rōmānae Breviārium*, II, 24, 25 (adapted) [20]
Carthāginiēnsēs—the Carthaginians
permūtātiōnem from *permūtātiō*, an exchange
propter sē—on his account
Rōmae—at Rome

[Caesar destroys the bridge which touches upon the territory of the Ubii, but strengthens the place with guards. Sending Basilus ahead with the cavalry, he marches against Ambiorix.]

b. Caesar, postquam per explorātōrēs Ubiōrum intellēxit Suebōs in silvās sē recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī timuit. Itaque cōstituit nōn prōgredi longius. Reductō exercitū, partem extrēmam pontis (quae erat proxima finibus Ubiōrum) *scidit*, ut barbarī reditum suum timērent atque ut auxilia eōrum tardārentur.

In extrēmā parte pontis, turrem altissimam aedificāvit, praesidiumque cohortium XII pontis dēfendendī causā posuit. Hunc locum magnis mūnitiōnibus cōfirmāvit. Ei locō praesidiōque C. Volcātium Tullum adulescentem praefēcit.

Cum frūmenta *mātūrēscere* inciperent, Caesar ipse ad bellum contrā Ambiorigem profectus est. Praemisit cum omnī equitātū L. Minucium Basilum quī cognōceret quid facere posset. Caesar monuit ut ignēs in castris prohiberet nē ūllum signum eius adventūs *procul* vidērētur. Sēsē celeriter secūtūrum esse dixit.

—Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō*, VI, 29 (adapted) [20]

scidit—from *scindō*, destroy
mātūrēscere—from *mātūrēscō*, ripen
procul—at a distance

Part II

Directions (1-10): In the space provided on a separate answer sheet, rewrite *completely each* of the following sentences, substituting for the italicized Latin term the grammatical form called for or the proper form

of the expression in parentheses. *Make any other changes in each sentence that are required by the substitution*, but, unless the meaning is changed by the parenthetical instructions, be sure to retain the general idea of the original sentence. [10]

1. *Postquam cōpiæ paratæ sunt*, exercitus ā Britannīā nāvigāvit. (ablative absolute)
2. *Praemium* ā magistrō nūntiātum est. (plural)
3. *Signum* ā lēgātō datum est. (tuba)
4. *Spectābat* puerum quem amābat. (noceō)
5. *Mors nautæ* in proeliō accidit. (miles)
6. Scīmus rēgem nāvēs cōgere. (sequor)
7. Mārcus impetūi *præest*. (dūcō)
8. Explōrātor in castris *est*. (properō)
9. Dux militēs mīsit *ad cōpiās superandās*. (ut clause)
10. Periculum *est* tantum ut cursum tenēre nōn possint. (imperfect tense)

Part III

Directions (11-20): Read the following passage carefully, but do *not* write a translation. Below the passage you will find ten questions or incomplete statements. Each statement or question is followed by four suggested answers numbered 1 through 4. Select the answer that best completes each on the basis of the information given in the passage and write its number on the line at the right. [20]

Gallī impetū novō Caesaris perterritī in forō ac locis apertiōribus *cuneatim* cōstitērunt ut, aciē instrūctā, contrā Rōmānōs pugnārent.

Ubi nēminem in æquum locum dēscendere sed militēs Caesaris in tōtō mūrō undique stāre vidērunt, timuērunt nē omnis spēs fugæ removērētur. Abiectis armis, extrēmās oppidī partēs petivērunt; pars ibi, cum in *angustō* exitū portarum prōcēderet, ā militibus Rōmānīs interfecta est et pars iam ēgressa portis ab equitibus interfecta est. Sic militēs Rōmānī *Cēnabī* (caede et labōre operis incitātī) nōn senibus, nōn fēminīs, nōn infantibus *pepercērunt*. Dēnique ex omnī numerō, quī fuit circiter milium XL, circiter DCCC, quī primō clāmōre auditō ex oppidō sē ēiēcērant, incolumēs ad Vercingetorigem pervēnērunt; ille iam nocte silentiō ex fugā hōs accēpit.

Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō*, VII, 28 (adapted)

cuneatim—in wedge-shaped formations

angustō—narrow

Cēnabī—in Cenabum

pepercērunt—from *parcō*, to spare

- | | |
|--|---------|
| 11. Gallī timēbant quod (1)dux novus vēnerat (2)mūrus vāstātus erat (3)dux Rōmānus eōs oppugnābat (4)Rōmānī parātī nōn erant | 11..... |
| 12. Gallī primō cōstituērunt (1)sē dēdere (2)concilium habēre (3)ex aciē fugere (4)in aciē sē dēfendere | 12..... |
| 13. Ubi militēs Rōmānī primō erant? (1)sub monte (2)longē ab oppidō (3)in mūrō (4)in fossā | 13..... |

44. The spacious reception room of a Roman house was called the (1)*tablinum* (2)*peristylum* (3)*compluvium* (4)*atrium* 44.....
45. At the conclusion of the Trojan War, a Greek hero, exposed to numerous misfortunes during his ten years of wandering and finally restored to his own country and to his wife, Penelope, was (1)*Hector* (2)*Achilles* (3)*Menelaus* (4)*Ulixes* 45.....
46. A haughty king of the Germans who was defeated in battle by Caesar was (1)*Ambiorix* (2)*Dumnorix* (3)*Ariovistus* (4)*Indutiomarus* 46.....
47. Among the Romans, the *corona civica* was a most coveted award granted for (1)winning the first military victory (2)preserving the life of a fellow citizen (3)attaining the first political office (4)safeguarding the highest interests of the Republic 47.....
48. In Rome, those magistrates who were similar to our treasury officers were called (1)*quaestores* (2)*praetores* (3)*aediles* (4)*lictors* 48.....
49. The title of *Imperator* was granted to Caesar after his first victory in Gaul over the (1)*Nervi* (2)*Helvetii* (3)*Belgae* (4)*Veneti* 49.....
50. The goddess of wisdom, war and all the liberal arts, who was said to have sprung full-grown and armed from the head of Jupiter, was (1)*Iuno* (2)*Venus* (3)*Minerva* (4)*Ceres* 50.....
51. When the Roman army was on the march, the van consisting of cavalry and light-armed infantry was called the (1)*auxilia* (2)*phalanx* (3)*novissimum agmen* (4)*primum agmen* 51.....
52. The Rubicon is a river in (1)Britain (2)Spain (3)northern Italy (4)southern Italy 52.....
53. The two consuls, the chief executives of the Roman state, held office for (1)one year (2)six years (3)ten years (4)six months 53.....
54. *Bacchanalian* derives its meaning from the god of (1)war (2)fire (3)wine (4)love 54.....
55. An offensive weapon which hurled darts and arrows was called (1)*testudo* (2)*aries* (3)*scorpio* (4)*pluteus* 55.....



S0-AYX-086